

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549**

**Amendment No. 1  
to**

**FORM S-3  
REGISTRATION STATEMENT UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933**

**IntelGenx Technologies Corp.**  
*(Exact Name of Registrant as Specified in its Charter)*

**Delaware**  
*(State or other jurisdiction of  
incorporation or organization)*

**2834**  
*(Primary Standard Industrial  
Classification Code Number)*

**87-0638336**  
*(I.R.S. Employer  
Identification Number)*

**6420 Abrams, Ville Saint Laurent  
Quebec, H4S 1Y2 Canada  
(514) 331-7440**  
*(Address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of registrant's principal executive offices)*

**Horst G. Zerbe  
Chief Executive Officer  
IntelGenx Technologies Corp.  
6420 Abrams, Ville Saint Laurent  
Quebec, H4S 1Y2 Canada  
(514) 331-7440**  
*(Name, address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of agent for service)*

*With Copies of Communications to:*  
**Richard Raymer  
James Guttman  
Dorsey & Whitney LLP  
TD Canada Trust Tower  
Brookfield Place, 161 Bay Street, Suite 4310  
Toronto, Ontario M5J 2S1 Canada  
Tel: (416) 367-7370**

**Approximate Date of Commencement of Proposed Sale to the Public:  
From time to time after the effective date of this registration statement.**

---

If the only securities being registered on this Form are being offered pursuant to dividend or interest reinvestment plans, please check the following box: [ ]

If any of the securities being registered on this Form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), check the following box. [X]

If this Form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, please check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering. [ ]

---

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering. [ ]

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(d) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering. [ ]

If this Form is a registration statement pursuant to General Instruction I.D. or a post-effective amendment thereto that shall become effective upon filing with the Commission pursuant to Rule 462(e) under the Securities Act, check the following box. [ ]

If this Form is a post-effective amendment to a registration statement filed pursuant to General Instruction I.D. filed to register additional securities or additional classes of securities pursuant to Rule 413(b) under the Securities Act, check the following box. [ ]

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer or a smaller reporting company. See the definitions of “large accelerated filer,” “accelerated filer” “smaller reporting company” and “emerging growth company” in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer [ ]

Accelerated filer [ ]

Non-accelerated filer [ ]

Smaller reporting company [X]

Emerging growth company [ ]

**CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE**

| <b>Title of Each Class of Securities to be Registered</b> | <b>Amount to be Registered</b> | <b>Proposed Offering Price Per Unit</b> | <b>Proposed Maximum Aggregate Offering Price</b> | <b>Amount of Registration Fee</b> |
|---|--------------------------------|---|--|-----------------------------------|
| Common Stock  | (1)                            | (2)                                     | (2)  |                                   |
| Warrants  | (1)                            | (2)                                     | (2)  |                                   |
| Rights  | (1)                            | (2)                                     | (2)  |                                   |
| Units   | (1)                            | (2)                                     | (2)  |                                   |
| Subscription Receipts                                     | (1)                            | (2)                                     | (2)  |                                   |
| Preferred Stock   | (1)                            | (2)                                     | (2)  |                                   |
| Debt Securities   | (1)                            | (2)                                     | (2)  |                                   |
| <b>Total</b>  | (1)                            | (2)                                     | <b>\$100,000,000</b>                             | <b>\$12,450 (3)(4)</b>            |

- (1) Includes an indeterminate number of shares of common stock, common stock purchase warrants, rights, subscription receipts, preferred stock, debt securities or units or any combination thereof. This registration statement also covers shares of common stock that may be issued upon exercise of warrants and shares of common stock or other securities of the Company that may be issued upon exercise of rights or conversion of subscription receipts, preferred stock or debt securities. In addition, any securities registered hereunder may be sold separately or as units with other securities registered hereunder. The securities which may be offered pursuant to this registration statement include, pursuant to Rule 416 of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), such additional number of shares of common stock of the Registrant that may become issuable as a result of any stock split, stock dividends or similar event
- (2) Represents the initial offering price of all securities sold up to an aggregate public offering price not to exceed \$100,000,000 or the equivalent thereof in foreign currencies, foreign currency units or composite currencies to the Registrant.
- (3) Pursuant to Rule 457(o) under the Securities Act, the registration fee has been calculated on the basis of the maximum aggregate offering price and the number of securities being registered has been omitted.
- (4) Previously Paid.

**The registrant hereby amends this Registration Statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this Registration Statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with Section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 or until the Registration Statement shall become effective on such date as the Commission, acting pursuant to said Section 8(a), may determine.**

**The information in this prospectus is not complete and may be changed. We may not sell these securities until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and it is not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted.**

**SUBJECT TO COMPLETION, DATED October 4, 2018**

**PROSPECTUS**

**IntelGenx Technologies Corp.**

**\$100,000,000  
Common Stock  
Warrants  
Rights  
Units  
Subscription Receipts  
Preferred Stock  
Debt Securities**

IntelGenx Technologies Corp. may offer and sell, from time to time, up to \$100,000,000 aggregate initial offering price of the Company's common stock, \$0.00001 par value (which we refer to as "Common Stock"), warrants to purchase Common Stock (which we refer to collectively as "Warrants"), rights to purchase Common Stock or other securities of the Company (which we refer to as "Rights"), subscription receipts for Common Stock, Warrants, Preferred Stock or any combination thereof (which we refer to as "Subscription Receipts"), preferred stock of the Company (which we refer to as "Preferred Stock"), or debt securities of the Company which may or may not be converted into other securities (which we refer to as "Debt Securities"), or any combination thereof (which we refer to as "Units"), in one or more transactions under this Prospectus (which we refer to as the "Prospectus"). We may also offer under this Prospectus any Common Stock issuable upon the exercise of Warrants and any Common Stock or other securities of the Company issuable upon the exercise of Rights and any Common Stock issuable on conversion of Subscription Receipts, Preferred Stock or Debt Securities. Collectively, the Common Stock, Warrants, Rights, Subscription Receipts, Preferred Stock, Debt Securities, shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants, Common Stock or other securities of the Company issuable upon the exercise of Rights, Subscription Receipts, Preferred Stock, and Debt Securities and Units are referred to as the "Securities."

This Prospectus provides you with a general description of the Securities that we may offer. Each time we offer Securities, we will provide you with a prospectus supplement (which we refer to as the "Prospectus Supplement") that describes specific information about the particular Securities being offered and may add, update or change information contained in this Prospectus. You should read both this Prospectus and the Prospectus Supplement, together with any additional information which is incorporated by reference into this Prospectus and the Prospectus Supplement. **This Prospectus may not be used to offer or sell Securities without the Prospectus Supplement which includes a description of the method and terms of that offering.**

We may sell the Securities on a continuous or delayed basis to or through underwriters, dealers or agents or directly to purchasers. The Prospectus Supplement, which we will provide to you each time we offer Securities, will set forth the names of any underwriters, dealers or agents involved in the sale of the Securities, and any applicable fee, commission or discount arrangements with them. For additional information on the methods of sale, you should refer to the section entitled "Plan of Distribution" in this Prospectus.

Our Common Stock is quoted on the OTCQX under the symbol "IGXT" and on the TSX Venture Exchange (the "TSX-V") under the symbol "IGX". The closing price of our Common Stock as quoted on the OTCQX on October 3, 2018 was \$1.13, and the closing price of our Common Stock on the TSX-V on October 3, 2018 was CDN \$1.51. **There is currently no market through which the Securities, other than the Common Stock, may be sold, and purchasers may not be able to resell the Securities purchased under this Prospectus. This may affect the pricing of the Securities, other than the Common Stock, in the secondary market, the transparency and availability of trading prices, the liquidity of these Securities and the extent of issuer regulation.** See "Risk Factors."

**Investing in the Securities involves risks. See "Risk Factors" on page 14.**

**These Securities have not been approved or disapproved by the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (which we refer to as the "SEC") or any state securities commission nor has the SEC or any state securities commission passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of this Prospectus. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.**

**The date of this Prospectus is October 4, 2018**

## CONTENTS

|  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| <a href="#"><u>FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS</u></a>                | <a href="#"><u>6</u></a>  |
| <a href="#"><u>SUMMARY</u></a>                                   | <a href="#"><u>7</u></a>  |
| <a href="#"><u>OUR COMPANY</u></a>                               | <a href="#"><u>10</u></a> |
| <a href="#"><u>RISK FACTORS</u></a>                              | <a href="#"><u>14</u></a> |
| <a href="#"><u>USE OF PROCEEDS</u></a>                           | <a href="#"><u>15</u></a> |
| <a href="#"><u>DESCRIPTION OF COMMON STOCK</u></a>               | <a href="#"><u>15</u></a> |
| <a href="#"><u>DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS</u></a>                   | <a href="#"><u>16</u></a> |
| <a href="#"><u>DESCRIPTION OF RIGHTS</u></a>                     | <a href="#"><u>18</u></a> |
| <a href="#"><u>DESCRIPTION OF SUBSCRIPTION RECEIPTS</u></a>      | <a href="#"><u>19</u></a> |
| <a href="#"><u>DESCRIPTION OF PREFERRED STOCK</u></a>            | <a href="#"><u>22</u></a> |
| <a href="#"><u>DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES</u></a>            | <a href="#"><u>22</u></a> |
| <a href="#"><u>DESCRIPTION OF UNITS</u></a>                      | <a href="#"><u>30</u></a> |
| <a href="#"><u>PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION</u></a>                      | <a href="#"><u>31</u></a> |
| <a href="#"><u>LEGAL MATTERS</u></a>                             | <a href="#"><u>32</u></a> |
| <a href="#"><u>EXPERTS</u></a>                                   | <a href="#"><u>32</u></a> |
| <a href="#"><u>WHERE YOU CAN FIND ADDITIONAL INFORMATION</u></a> | <a href="#"><u>33</u></a> |
| <a href="#"><u>DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE</u></a>       | <a href="#"><u>33</u></a> |

You should rely only on the information contained in this Prospectus and any related Prospectus Supplement or free writing prospectus that we may provide to you in connection with the Securities offered hereby. We have not authorized any other person to provide you with different information. If anyone provides you with different or inconsistent information, you should not rely on it. We are not making an offer to sell these Securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted. You should assume that the information appearing in this Prospectus is accurate only as of the date on the front cover of this Prospectus. Our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects may have changed since that date. Neither the delivery of this Prospectus nor any sale made in connection with this Prospectus shall, under any circumstances, create any implication that there has been no change in our affairs since the date of this Prospectus or that the information contained in this Prospectus is correct as of any time after its date.

---

## FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

Certain statements included or incorporated by reference in this Prospectus constitute forward-looking statements within the meaning of applicable securities laws. All statements contained in this registration statement that are not clearly historical in nature are forward-looking, and the words “anticipate”, “believe”, “continue”, “expect”, “estimate”, “intend”, “may”, “plan”, “will”, “shall” and other similar expressions are generally intended to identify forward-looking statements within the meaning of Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933 and Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. All forward-looking statements are based on our beliefs and assumptions based on information available at the time the assumption was made. These forward-looking statements are not based on historical facts but on management’s expectations regarding future growth, results of operations, performance, future capital and other expenditures (including the amount, nature and sources of funding thereof), competitive advantages, business prospects and opportunities. Forward-looking statements involve significant known and unknown risks, uncertainties, assumptions and other factors that may cause our actual results, levels of activity, performance or achievements to differ materially from those implied by forward-looking statements. These factors should be considered carefully and prospective investors should not place undue reliance on the forward-looking statements. Although the forward-looking statements contained in this registration statement or incorporated by reference herein are based upon what management believes to be reasonable assumptions, there is no assurance that actual results will be consistent with these forward-looking statements. These forward-looking statements are made as of the date of this registration statement or as of the date specified in the documents incorporated by reference herein, as the case may be.

Forward-looking statements relate to analyses and other information that are based on forecasts of future results, estimates of amounts not yet determinable and other uncertain events. Forward-looking statements, by their nature, are based on assumptions, including those described below, and involve known and unknown risks, uncertainties and other factors that may cause the actual results, performance or achievements to differ materially from those expressed in the forward-looking statements. Any forecasts or forward-looking predictions or statements cannot be relied upon due to, among other things, changing external events and general uncertainties of the business. Results indicated in forward-looking statements may differ materially from actual results for a number of reasons, including without limitation, risks associated with the ability to obtain sufficient and suitable financing to support operations, R&D clinical trials and commercialization of products; the ability to execute partnerships and corporate alliances; uncertainties relating to the regulatory approval process; the ability to develop drug delivery technologies and manufacturing processes that result in competitive advantage and commercial viability; the impact of competitive products and pricing and the ability to successfully compete in the targeted markets; the successful and timely completion of pre-clinical and clinical studies; the ability to attract and retain key personnel and key collaborators; the ability to adequately protect proprietary information and technology from competitors; and the ability to ensure that we do not infringe upon the rights of third parties. Material factors or assumptions that were applied in drawing a conclusion or making an estimate set out in the forward-looking information include the factors identified throughout this Prospectus. The forward-looking statements contained in this Prospectus represent our expectations as of the date of this Prospectus, and are subject to change after such date. We have no intention or obligation to update or revise any forward-looking statements whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise, except as required under applicable securities regulations. **We undertake no obligation to update any forward-looking statements to reflect events or circumstances after the date on which such statements were made or to reflect the occurrence of unanticipated events, except as may be required by applicable securities laws.**

## SUMMARY

### The Company

IntelGenx Corp., our operating subsidiary, is a drug delivery company established in 2003 and headquartered in Montreal, Quebec, Canada. In this Prospectus, the words “Company,” “IntelGenx” “we,” “us,” and “our,” refer collectively to IntelGenx Technologies Corp. and IntelGenx Corp., our wholly owned Canadian subsidiary. Our focus is on the development of novel oral immediate-release and controlled-release products for the pharmaceutical market. More recently, we have made the strategic decision to enter the oral film market and have implemented commercial oral film manufacturing capability. This enables us to offer our partners a comprehensive portfolio of pharmaceutical services, including pharmaceutical R&D, clinical monitoring, regulatory support, tech transfer and manufacturing scale-up, and commercial manufacturing.

### Recent Developments

#### *Tilray*®

On September 20, 2018, we announced that we executed a non-binding letter of intent (the “LOI”) with Tilray, Inc. (NASDAQ:TLRY) (“Tilray®”), a global leader in cannabis research, cultivation, production and distribution, to co-develop and commercialize oral film products infused with recreational and medical cannabis (“cannabis-infused VersaFilm™”), in anticipation of amended cannabis regulations which would allow adult-use consumers to purchase edible products.

We believe that dissolvable films for the consumption of marijuana will appeal to both medicinal and recreational markets and that a significant portion of those likely to use marijuana will find a dissolvable film appealing, due to its ease-of-use, discreteness and lack of harmful smoke.

#### *Suboxone*®

On May 14, 2018, we announced that all patent litigation between the Company, Par Pharmaceutical, Inc., Indivior, Inc., Indivior UK Limited, and Aquestive Therapeutics, Inc. (formerly MonoSol Rx, LLC) related to Suboxone® film has been settled. The settlement agreement permits Par to begin selling a generic version of Suboxone® film on January 1, 2023, or earlier under certain circumstances. Par (now Endo Ventures) is the Company’s commercial and development partner for a generic version of Suboxone® sublingual film product, which is indicated for the treatment of opioid dependence. We will have exclusive rights to manufacture and supply product to Endo Ventures, while Endo Ventures will have exclusive rights to market and sell Suboxone supplied by the Company in the United States.

### The Securities Offered under this Prospectus

We may offer the Common Stock, Warrants, Rights, Subscription Receipts, Preferred Stock, Debt Securities or Units with a total value of up to \$100,000,000 from time to time under this Prospectus, together with any applicable Prospectus Supplement and related free writing prospectus, if any, at prices and on terms to be determined by market conditions at the time of offering. This Prospectus provides you with a general description of the Securities we may offer. Each time we offer Securities, we will provide a Prospectus Supplement that will describe the specific amounts, prices and other important terms of the Securities, including, to the extent applicable:

- aggregate offering price;
- the designation, number and terms of the Common Stock purchasable upon exercise of the Warrants, any procedures that will result in the adjustment of those numbers, the exercise price, dates and periods of exercise, and the currency or the currency unit in which the exercise price must be paid and any other specific terms;
- the record date for shareholders entitled to receive the Rights, the designation, number and terms of the Common Stock or other securities purchasable upon exercise of the Rights, any procedures that will result in the adjustment of those numbers, the exercise price, dates and periods of exercise, and the currency or the currency unit in which the exercise price must be paid and any other specific terms;
- rates and times of payment of interest or dividends, if any;

- redemption, conversion, exchange or sinking funds terms, if any;
- rank and security, if any;
- conversion or exchange prices or rates, if any, and if applicable, any provision for changes or adjustment in the conversion or exchange prices or rates in the securities or other property receivable upon conversion or exchange;
- restrictive covenants, if any;
- voting or other rights, if any; and
- important United States and Canadian federal income tax considerations.

A Prospectus Supplement and any related free writing prospectus that we may authorize to be provided to you may also add, update or change information contained in this Prospectus or in documents we have incorporated by reference. However, no Prospectus Supplement or free writing prospectus will offer a security that is not registered and described in this Prospectus at the time of the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this Prospectus is a part.

We may sell the Securities on a continuous or delayed basis to or through underwriters, dealers or agents or directly to purchasers. The Prospectus Supplement, which we will provide to you each time we offer Securities, will set forth the names of any underwriters, dealers or agents involved in the sale of the Securities, and any applicable fee, commission or discount arrangements with them.

### ***Common Stock***

We may offer Common Stock. Holders of Common Stock are entitled to one vote per Common Stock on all matters that require shareholder approval.

Our Common Stock is described in greater detail in this Prospectus under “Description of Common Stock.”

### ***Warrants***

We may offer Warrants for the purchase of Common Stock or Preferred Stock, in one or more series, from time to time. We may issue Warrants independently or together with Common Stock or Preferred Shares and the Warrants may be attached to or separate from such securities.

The Warrants will be evidenced by warrant certificates and may be issued under one or more warrant indentures, which are contracts between us and a warrant trustee for the holders of the Warrants. In this Prospectus, we have summarized certain general features of the Warrants under “Description of Warrants.” We urge you, however, to read any Prospectus Supplement and any free writing prospectus that we may authorize to be provided to you related to the series of Warrants being offered, as well as the complete warrant indentures, if applicable, and warrant certificates that contain the terms of the Warrants. If applicable, specific warrant indentures will contain additional important terms and provisions and will be filed as exhibits to the registration statement of which this Prospectus is a part, or incorporated by reference from a current report on Form 8-K that we file with the SEC.

### ***Rights***

We may offer Rights to our existing shareholders to purchase additional Common Stock, preferred shares or other securities of the Company. For any particular Rights, the applicable Prospectus Supplement will describe the terms of such rights and rights agreement including the period during which such Rights may be exercised, the manner of exercising such Rights, the transferability of such Rights and the number of Common Stock or other securities that may be purchased in connection with each right and the subscription price for the purchase of such Common Stock or other securities. In connection with a rights offering, we may enter into a separate agreement with one or more underwriters or standby purchasers to purchase any securities not subscribed for in the rights offering by existing shareholders, which will be described in the applicable Prospectus Supplement. Each series of rights will be issued under a separate rights agreement to be entered into between us and a bank, trust company or transfer agent, as rights agent.

In this Prospectus, we have summarized certain general features of the Rights under “Description of Rights.” We urge you, however, to read any Prospectus Supplement and any free writing prospectus that we may authorize to be provided to you related to the Rights being offered, as well as the complete Rights certificates that contain the terms of the Rights. We may evidence each series of rights by rights certificates that we may issue under a separate rights agreement with a rights agent. If applicable, we will file as exhibits to the registration statement of which this Prospectus is a part, or will incorporate by reference from a current report on Form 8-K that we file with the SEC, the rights agreements that describe the terms of the series of Rights we are offering before the issuance of the related series of Rights.

### ***Subscription Receipts***

We may issue Subscription Receipts, which will entitle holders to receive upon satisfaction of certain release conditions and for no additional consideration, Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Warrants or other securities of the Company or any combination thereof. Subscription Receipts will be issued pursuant to one or more subscription receipt agreements, each to be entered into between us and an escrow agent, which will establish the terms and conditions of the Subscription Receipts. Each escrow agent will be a financial institution organized under the laws of the United States or any state thereof or Canada or any province thereof and authorized to carry on business as a trustee. A copy of the form of subscription receipt agreement will be filed as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this Prospectus is a part, or will be incorporated by reference from a Current Report on Form 8-K that we file with the SEC.

### ***Preferred Stock***

We may offer Preferred Stock. The Preferred Stock issuable in series will have the rights, privileges, restrictions and conditions assigned to the particular series upon the board of directors of the Company approving their issuance, subject to the Company’s articles of incorporation. The Series A preferred shares are non-redeemable, non-callable, non-voting and do not have a right to dividends. The terms of any preferred shares offered under this Prospectus and any related agreements will be described in the Prospectus Supplement filed in respect of the issuance of such preferred shares.

### ***Debt Securities***

We may offer secured or unsecured Debt Securities under this Prospectus. The terms of any Debt Securities and any related agreements or indentures will be described in a Prospectus Supplement to be filed in respect of such offering.

### ***Units***

We may offer Units consisting of Common Stock, Warrants, Preferred Stock, Rights, Subscription Receipts and Debt Securities in any combination. In this Prospectus, we have summarized certain general features of the Units under “Description of Units.” We urge you, however, to read any Prospectus Supplement and any free writing prospectus that we may authorize to be provided to you related to the series of Units being offered. We may evidence each series of Units by unit certificates that we may issue under a separate unit agreement with a unit agent. If applicable, we will file as exhibits to the registration statement of which this Prospectus is a part, or will incorporate by reference from a current report on Form 8-K that we file with the SEC, the unit agreements that describe the terms of the series of Units we are offering before the issuance of the related series of Units.

### **Risk Factors**

See “*Risk Factors*,” as well as other information included in this prospectus, for a discussion of factors you should read and consider carefully before investing in our securities

## OUR COMPANY

You should rely only on the information contained in this Prospectus. We have not authorized anyone to provide you with information different from that contained in this Prospectus. The distribution or possession of this Prospectus in or from certain jurisdictions may be restricted by law. This Prospectus is not an offer to sell these Securities and is not soliciting an offer to buy these Securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted or where the person making the offer or sale is not qualified to do so or to any person to whom it is not permitted to make such offer or sale. The information contained in this Prospectus is accurate only as of the date of this Prospectus, regardless of the time of delivery of this Prospectus or of any sale of the Securities. Our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects may have changed since that date.

All amounts are U.S.\$ unless otherwise indicated. Unless otherwise indicated, the term “year,” “fiscal year” or “fiscal” refers to our fiscal year ending December 31<sup>st</sup>.

### Corporate History

Our predecessor company, Big Flash Corp., was incorporated in Delaware on July 27, 1999. On April 28, 2006, Big Flash, through its Canadian holding corporation, completed the acquisition of IntelGenx Corp., a Canadian company incorporated on June 15, 2003. We did not have any operations prior to the acquisition of IntelGenx Corp. In connection with the acquisition, we changed our name from Big Flash Corp. to IntelGenx Technologies Corp. IntelGenx Corp. has continued operations as our operating subsidiary.

### Our Business

#### *Overview*

We are a drug delivery company established in 2003 and headquartered in Montreal, Quebec, Canada. Our focus is on the development of novel oral immediate-release and controlled-release products for the pharmaceutical market. More recently, we have made the strategic decision to enter the oral film market and have implemented commercial oral film manufacturing capability. This enables us to offer our partners a comprehensive portfolio of pharmaceutical services, including pharmaceutical R&D, clinical monitoring, regulatory support, tech transfer and manufacturing scale-up, and commercial manufacturing.

Our business strategy is to develop pharmaceutical products based on our proprietary drug delivery technologies and, once the viability of a product has been demonstrated, license the commercial rights to partners in the pharmaceutical industry. In certain cases, we rely upon partners in the pharmaceutical industry to fund development of the licensed products, complete the regulatory approval process with the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (“FDA”) or other regulatory agencies relating to the licensed products, and assume responsibility for marketing and distributing such products.

In addition, we may choose to pursue the development of certain products until the project reaches the marketing and distribution stage. We will assess the potential for successful development of a product and associated costs, and then determine at which stage it is most prudent to seek a partner, balancing such costs against the potential for additional returns earned by partnering later in the development process.

Managing our project pipeline is a key success factor for the Company. We have undertaken a strategy under which we will work with pharmaceutical companies in order to apply our oral film technology to pharmaceutical products for which patent protection is nearing expiration, a strategy which is often referred to as “lifecycle management”. Under §505(b)(2) of the Food, Drug, and Cosmetics Act, the FDA may grant market exclusivity for a term of up to three years following approval of a listed drug that contains previously approved active ingredients but is approved in a new dosage, dosage form, route of administration or combination.

The 505(b)(2) pathway is also the regulatory approach to be followed if an applicant intends to file an application for a product containing a drug that is already approved by the FDA for a certain indication and for which the applicant is seeking approval for a new indication or for a new use, the approval of which is required to be supported by new clinical trials, other than bioavailability studies. We have implemented a strategy under which we actively look for such so-called “repurposing opportunities” and determine whether our proprietary VersaFilm™ technology adds value to the product. We currently have two such drug repurposing projects in our development pipeline.

We continue to develop the existing products in our pipeline and may also perform research and development on other potential products as opportunities arise.

We have established a state-of-the-art manufacturing facility with the intent to manufacture all our VersaFilm™ products in-house as we believe that this:

1. represents a profitable business opportunity,
2. will reduce our dependency upon third-party contract manufacturers, thereby protecting our manufacturing process know-how and intellectual property, and
3. allows us to offer our clients and development partners a full service from product conception through to supply of the finished product.

#### *Recent Developments*

On September 20, 2018, we announced that we executed a non-binding letter of intent (the “LOI”) with Tilray, Inc. (NASDAQ:TLRY) (“Tilray®”), a global leader in cannabis research, cultivation, production and distribution, to co-develop and commercialize oral film products infused with recreational and medical cannabis (“cannabis-infused VersaFilm™”), in anticipation of amended cannabis regulations which would allow adult-use consumers to purchase edible products.

Pursuant to the LOI, subject to entering into a definitive agreement and the satisfaction of customary closing conditions, IntelGenx and Tilray® will fund 20% and 80% of the costs associated with the development of the cannabis-infused VersaFilm™ products, respectively. We will have rights to manufacture and supply the co-developed products to Tilray®, and will also receive a fixed single-digit royalty on net product sales. Tilray® will have the exclusive, worldwide marketing and distribution rights for the co-developed products.

The LOI also contemplates that, at the time of entering into the definitive agreement, Tilray® will make a strategic investment in IntelGenx by way of a non-brokered private placement (“Private Placement”). Tilray® will purchase 1,250,000 shares of Common Stock of IntelGenx at a price of USD\$0.80 per share, which is equal to the five-day volume weighted average closing price of IntelGenx’ common stock on the OTCQX for the period ended September 18, 2018. IntelGenx intends to use the proceeds from the Private Placement for cannabis-infused VersaFilm™ product development in connection with the LOI. The Private Placement will be subject to the approval of the TSX-V.

We believe that dissolvable films for the consumption of marijuana will appeal to both medicinal and recreational markets and that a significant portion of those likely to use marijuana will find a dissolvable film appealing, due to its ease-of-use, discreteness and lack of harmful smoke.

On May 14, 2018, we announced that all patent litigation between the Company, Par Pharmaceutical, Inc., Indivior, Inc., Indivior UK Limited, and Aquestive Therapeutics, Inc. (formerly MonoSol Rx, LLC) related to Suboxone® film has been settled. The settlement agreement permits Par to begin selling a generic version of Suboxone® film on January 1, 2023, or earlier under certain circumstances. Par (now Endo Ventures) is the Company’s commercial and development partner for a generic version of Suboxone® sublingual film product, which is indicated for the treatment of opioid dependence. We will have exclusive rights to manufacture and supply product to Endo Ventures, while Endo Ventures will have exclusive rights to market and sell Suboxone supplied by the Company in the United States.

#### *Our Offices and Other Corporate Information*

Our executive offices are located at 6420 Abrams, Ville Saint-Laurent, Quebec, H4S 1Y2, Canada, and our telephone number is (514) 331-7440. Our web site address is <http://www.IntelGenx.com> . Information contained on our web site is not a part of this Prospectus.

## The Securities Offered under this Prospectus

We may offer the Common Stock, Warrants, Rights, Subscription Receipts, Preferred Stock, Debt Securities or Units with a total value of up to \$100,000,000 from time to time under this Prospectus, together with any applicable Prospectus Supplement and related free writing prospectus, if any, at prices and on terms to be determined by market conditions at the time of offering. This Prospectus provides you with a general description of the Securities we may offer. Each time we offer Securities, we will provide a Prospectus Supplement that will describe the specific amounts, prices and other important terms of the Securities, including, to the extent applicable:

- aggregate offering price;
- the designation, number and terms of the Common Stock purchasable upon exercise of the Warrants, any procedures that will result in the adjustment of those numbers, the exercise price, dates and periods of exercise, and the currency or the currency unit in which the exercise price must be paid and any other specific terms;
- the record date for stockholders entitled to receive the Rights, the designation, number and terms of the Common Stock or other securities purchasable upon exercise of the Rights, any procedures that will result in the adjustment of those numbers, the exercise price, dates and periods of exercise, and the currency or the currency unit in which the exercise price must be paid and any other specific terms;
- rates and times of payment of interest or dividends, if any;
- redemption, conversion, exchange or sinking funds terms, if any;
- rank and security, if any;
- conversion or exchange prices or rates, if any, and if applicable, any provision for changes or adjustment in the conversion or exchange prices or rates in the Securities or other property receivable upon conversion or exchange;
- restrictive covenants, if any;
- voting or other rights, if any; and
- important United States and Canadian federal income tax considerations.

A Prospectus Supplement and any related free writing prospectus that we may authorize to be provided to you may also add, update or change information contained in this Prospectus or in documents we have incorporated by reference. However, no Prospectus Supplement or free writing prospectus will offer a security that is not registered and described in this Prospectus at the time of the effectiveness of the registration statement of which this Prospectus is a part.

We may sell the Securities on a continuous or delayed basis to or through underwriters, dealers or agents or directly to purchasers. The Prospectus Supplement, which we will provide to you each time we offer Securities, will set forth the names of any underwriters, dealers or agents involved in the sale of the Securities, and any applicable fee, commission or discount arrangements with them.

### *Common Stock*

We may offer Common Stock. Holders of Common Stock are entitled to one vote per share of Common Stock on all matters that require stockholder approval.

Our Common Stock is described in greater detail in this Prospectus under “Description of Common Stock.”

### *Warrants*

We may offer Warrants for the purchase of Common Stock or Preferred Stock, in one or more series, from time to time. We may issue Warrants independently or together with Common Stock or Preferred Stock and the Warrants may be attached to or separate from such securities.

The Warrants issued to U.S. investors may be evidenced by warrant certificates and may be issued under one or more warrant indentures, which are contracts between us and a warrant trustee for the holders of the Warrants. In this Prospectus, we have summarized certain general features of the Warrants under “Description of Warrants.” We urge you, however, to read any Prospectus Supplement and any free writing prospectus that we may authorize to be provided to you related to the series of Warrants being offered, as well as the complete warrant indentures, if applicable, and warrant certificates that contain the terms of the Warrants. If applicable, specific warrant indentures will contain additional important terms and provisions and will be filed as exhibits to the registration statement of which this Prospectus is a part, or incorporated by reference from a current report on Form 8-K that we file with the SEC.

### *Rights*

We may offer Rights to our existing stockholders to purchase additional Common Stock, Preferred Stock or other securities of the Company. For any particular Rights, the applicable Prospectus Supplement will describe the terms of such rights and rights agreement including the period during which such Rights may be exercised, the manner of exercising such Rights, the transferability of such Rights and the number of Common Stock or other securities that may be purchased in connection with each right and the subscription price for the purchase of such Common Stock or other securities. In connection with a rights offering, we may enter into a separate agreement with one or more underwriters or standby purchasers to purchase any securities not subscribed for in the rights offering by existing stockholders, which will be described in the applicable Prospectus Supplement. Each series of rights will be issued under a separate rights agreement to be entered into between us and a bank, trust company or transfer agent, as rights agent.

In this Prospectus, we have summarized certain general features of the Rights under “Description of Rights.” We urge you, however, to read any Prospectus Supplement and any free writing prospectus that we may authorize to be provided to you related to the Rights being offered, as well as the complete Rights certificates that contain the terms of the Rights. We may evidence each series of rights by rights certificates that we may issue under a separate rights agreement with a rights agent. If applicable, we will file as exhibits to the registration statement of which this Prospectus is a part, or will incorporate by reference from a current report on Form 8-K that we file with the SEC, the rights agreements that describe the terms of the series of Rights we are offering before the issuance of the related series of Rights.

### *Subscription Receipts*

We may issue Subscription Receipts, which will entitle holders to receive upon satisfaction of certain release conditions and for no additional consideration, Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Warrants or other securities of the Company or any combination thereof. Subscription Receipts will be issued pursuant to one or more subscription receipt agreements, each to be entered into between us and an escrow agent, which will establish the terms and conditions of the Subscription Receipts. Each escrow agent will be a financial institution organized under the laws of the United States or any state thereof or Canada or any province thereof and authorized to carry on business as a trustee. A copy of the form of subscription receipt agreement will be filed as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this Prospectus is a part, or will be incorporated by reference from a Current Report on Form 8-K that we file with the SEC.

### *Preferred Stock*

We may offer Preferred Stock. The Preferred Stock issuable in series will have the rights, privileges, restrictions and conditions assigned to the particular series upon the board of directors of the Company approving their issuance, subject to the Company’s articles of incorporation. The terms of any Preferred Stock offered under this Prospectus and any related agreements will be described in the Prospectus Supplement filed in respect of the issuance of such Preferred Stock.

### *Debt Securities*

We may offer secured or unsecured Debt Securities under this Prospectus. The terms of any Debt Securities and any related agreements or indentures will be described in a Prospectus Supplement to be filed in respect of such offering.

### *Units*

We may offer Units consisting of Common Stock, Warrants, Preferred Stock, Rights, Subscription Receipts and Debt Securities in any combination. In this Prospectus, we have summarized certain general features of the Units under “Description of Units.” We urge you, however, to read any Prospectus Supplement and any free writing prospectus that we may authorize to be provided to you related to the series of Units being offered. We may evidence each series of Units by unit certificates that we may issue under a separate unit agreement with a unit agent. If applicable, we will file as exhibits to the registration statement of which this Prospectus is a part, or will incorporate by reference from a current report on Form 8-K that we file with the SEC, the unit agreements that describe the terms of the series of Units we are offering before the issuance of the related series of Units.

## *Risk Factors*

See “Risk Factors,” as well as other information included in this prospectus, for a discussion of factors you should read and consider carefully before investing in our Securities

**THIS PROSPECTUS MAY NOT BE USED TO OFFER OR SELL ANY SECURITIES UNLESS ACCOMPANIED BY A PROSPECTUS SUPPLEMENT.**

### **RISK FACTORS**

*Our business faces many risks. Any of the risks discussed below, or elsewhere in this report or in our other filings with the SEC, could have a material impact on our business, financial condition, or results of operations.*

*You should carefully consider the risks described under the heading, "Risk Factors", in our most recent Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017 which are incorporated by reference into this Prospectus before making an investment decision. You should also refer to the other information in this Prospectus or incorporated by reference into this Prospectus, including our financial statements and the related notes thereto. The risks and uncertainties described in this Prospectus or incorporated by reference into this Prospectus are not the only risks and uncertainties we face. Additional risks and uncertainties not presently known to us or that we currently deem immaterial also may impair our business operations. If any of the risks described actually occur, our business, results of operations and financial condition could suffer. In that event the trading price of our Common Stock could decline. The risks described also include forward looking statements and our actual results may differ substantially from those discussed in these forward-looking statements.*

***You may experience future dilution as a result of future equity offerings.***

In order to raise additional capital, we may in the future offer additional shares of Common Stock or other securities convertible into or exchangeable for Common Stock at prices that may not be the same as the price per share paid by any investor in an offering in a subsequent Prospectus Supplement. We may sell shares or other securities in any other offering at a price per share that is less than the price per share paid by any investor in an offering in a subsequent Prospectus Supplement, and investors purchasing shares or other securities in the future could have rights superior to you. The price per share at which we sell additional shares of Common Stock or securities convertible or exchangeable into Common Stock, in future transactions may be higher or lower than the price per share paid by any investor in an offering under a subsequent Prospectus Supplement.

***Future offerings of debt or preferred equity securities, which would rank senior to our Common Stock, may adversely affect the market price of our Common Stock.***

If, in the future, we decide to issue debt or preferred equity securities that may rank senior to our Common Stock, it is likely that such securities will be governed by an indenture or other instrument containing covenants restricting our operating flexibility. Any convertible or exchangeable securities that we issue in the future may have rights, preferences and privileges more favorable than those of our Common Stock and may result in dilution to owners of our Common Stock. We and, indirectly, our stockholders, will bear the cost of issuing and servicing such securities. Because our decision to issue debt or equity securities in any future offering will depend on market conditions and other factors beyond our control, we cannot predict or estimate the amount, timing or nature of our future offerings. Thus, holders of our Common Stock will bear the risk of our future offerings reducing the market price of our Common Stock and diluting the value of their stock holdings in us.

***There can be no assurance as to the liquidity of the trading market for certain Securities or that a trading market for certain Securities will develop.***

There is no public market for the Warrants, Preferred Stock, Rights, Subscription Receipts or Debt Securities and, unless otherwise specified in the applicable Prospectus Supplement, the Company does not intend to apply for listing of these securities on any securities exchange. If these securities are traded after their initial issue, they may trade at a discount from their initial offering prices depending on the market for similar securities, prevailing interest rates and other factors, including general economic conditions and the Company's financial condition. There can be no assurance as to the liquidity of the trading market for any Warrants, Preferred Stock, Rights, Subscription Receipts or Debt Securities or that a trading market for these securities will develop.

***We have entered into certain non-binding agreements and there can be no assurance that they materialize into a definitive agreement or transaction.***

Consistent with its past practice and in the normal course, the Company has outstanding non-binding letters of intent and/or conditional agreements or may otherwise be engaged in discussions with respect to possible collaborations, studies, product development or acquisitions which may or may not be material, including, without limitation, the non-binding letter of intent dated September 20, 2018 with Tilray<sup>®</sup>. There is no assurance that any of these letters, agreements and/or discussions will result in a definitive agreement or, if they do, what the final terms or timing of any such transactions would be, whether such transactions will generate revenues, be profitable for the Company, or be well-received by the marketplace.

#### **USE OF PROCEEDS**

Unless the applicable Prospectus Supplement states otherwise, we will use the net proceeds we receive from the sale of the Securities for general corporate purposes, which may include, among other things, working capital, capital expenditures, debt repayment, the financing of possible acquisitions or stock repurchases. The prospectus supplement relating to a particular offering of Securities by us will identify the use of proceeds for that offering.

#### **DESCRIPTION OF COMMON STOCK**

We are authorized to issue 200,000,000 shares of Common Stock with a par value of \$0.00001. As at October 4, 2018, there were 73,491,539 shares of Common Stock issued and outstanding.

The holders of Common Stock are entitled to one vote per share on all matters voted on by stockholders, including the election of directors. Except as otherwise required by law, the holders of Common Stock exclusively possess all voting power. The holders of Common Stock are entitled to dividends as may be declared from time to time by our board of directors from funds available for distribution to holders. No holder of Common Stock has any pre-emptive right to subscribe to any securities of ours of any kind or class or any cumulative voting rights. The outstanding shares of Common Stock are, and the shares, upon issuance and sale as contemplated will be, duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.

#### **Rights Upon Dissolution or Winding Up**

The Delaware General Corporation Law provides that upon dissolution, liquidation or winding-up of the Company, holders of common stock have the lowest priority in the distribution of assets and will only receive a distribution if all senior obligations have been paid. If all senior obligations have been paid, the holders of shares of Common Stock will be entitled to receive our assets available for distribution proportionate to their pro rata ownership of the outstanding shares of common stock.

#### **Anti-Takeover Effects of Various Provisions of Delaware Law and Our Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws**

The Delaware General Corporation Law, our certificate of incorporation and our by-laws contain provisions that may have some anti-takeover effects and may delay, defer or prevent a tender offer or takeover attempt that a stockholder might consider in his, her or its best interest, including those attempts that might result in a premium over the market price for the shares held by stockholders.

## Delaware Anti-Takeover Statute

We are subject to Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law (“Section 203”). Subject to specific exceptions, Section 203 prohibits a publicly held Delaware corporation from engaging in a “business combination” with an “interested stockholder” for a period of three years after the time the stockholder becomes an interested stockholder, unless:

- the business combination, or the transaction in which the stockholder became an interested stockholder, is approved by our board of directors prior to the time the interested stockholder attained that status;
- upon consummation of the transaction that resulted in the stockholder becoming an interested stockholder, the interested stockholder owned at least 85% of our voting stock outstanding at the time the transaction commenced, excluding those shares owned by persons who are directors and also officers and employee stock plans in which employee participants do not have the right to determine confidentially whether shares held subject to the plan will be tendered in a tender or exchange offer; or
- at or after the time a stockholder became an interested stockholder, the business combination is approved by our board of directors and authorized at an annual or special meeting of stockholders by the affirmative vote of at least two-thirds of our outstanding voting stock that is not owned by the interested stockholder.

“Business combinations” include mergers, asset sales and other transactions resulting in a financial benefit to the interested stockholder. Subject to various exceptions, in general, an “interested stockholder” is a stockholder who, together with his, her or its affiliates and associates, owns, or within three years did own, 15% or more of the shares of our outstanding voting stock. These restrictions could prohibit or delay the accomplishment of mergers or other takeover or change of control attempts with respect to us and, therefore, may discourage attempts to acquire us.

## DESCRIPTION OF WARRANTS

The following description, together with the additional information we may include in any applicable Prospectus Supplements and free writing prospectuses, summarizes the material terms and provisions of the Warrants that we may offer under this Prospectus, which will consist of Warrants to purchase Common Stock or Preferred Stock and may be issued in one or more series. Warrants may be offered independently or together with Common Stock or Preferred Stock, Rights or any combination thereof, and may be attached to or separate from those Securities. While the terms we have summarized below will apply generally to any Warrants that we may offer under this Prospectus, we will describe the particular terms of any series of Warrants that we may offer in more detail in the applicable Prospectus Supplement and any applicable free writing prospectus. The terms of any Warrants offered under a Prospectus Supplement may differ from the terms described below.

### General

Warrants may be issued under and governed by the terms of one or more warrant indentures (each of which we refer to as a “Warrant Indenture”) between us and a warrant trustee (which we refer to as the “Warrant Trustee”) that we will name in the relevant Prospectus Supplement, if applicable. Each Warrant Trustee will be a financial institution organized under the laws of Canada, the United States, or any province or state thereof, and authorized to carry on business as a trustee.

This summary of some of the provisions of the Warrants is not complete. The statements made in this Prospectus relating to any Warrant Indenture and Warrants to be issued under this Prospectus are summaries of certain anticipated provisions thereof and do not purport to be complete and are subject to, and are qualified in their entirety by reference to, all provisions of the Warrant Indenture, if any, and the Warrant certificate. Prospective investors should refer to the Warrant Indenture, if any, and the Warrant certificate relating to the specific Warrants being offered for the complete terms of the Warrants. If applicable, we will file as exhibits to the registration statement of which this Prospectus is a part, or will incorporate by reference from a Current Report on Form 8-K that we file with the SEC, any Warrant Indenture describing the terms and conditions of Warrants we are offering before the issuance of such Warrants.

The applicable Prospectus Supplement relating to any Warrants offered by us will describe the particular terms of those Warrants and include specific terms relating to the offering. This description will include, where applicable:

- the designation and aggregate number of Warrants;
- the price at which the Warrants will be offered;
- the currency or currencies in which the Warrants will be offered;
- the date on which the right to exercise the Warrants will commence and the date on which the right will expire;
- the number of shares of Common Stock or Preferred Stock that may be purchased upon exercise of each Warrant and the price at which and currency or currencies in which the Common Stock or Preferred Stock may be purchased upon exercise of each Warrant;
- the designation and terms of any Securities with which the Warrants will be offered, if any, and the number of the Warrants that will be offered with each Security;
- the date or dates, if any, on or after which the Warrants and the other Securities with which the Warrants will be offered will be transferable separately;
- whether the Warrants will be subject to redemption and, if so, the terms of such redemption provisions;
- whether we will issue the Warrants as global securities and, if so, the identity of the depository of the global securities;
- whether the Warrants will be listed on any exchange;
- material United States and Canadian federal income tax consequences of acquiring, owning, exercising and disposing of the Warrants; and
- any other material terms or conditions of the Warrants.

### **Rights of Holders Prior to Exercise**

Prior to the exercise of their Warrants, holders of Warrants will not have any of the rights of holders of the Common Stock or Preferred Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants.

### **Exercise of Warrants**

Each Warrant will entitle the holder to purchase the Common Stock or Preferred Stock that we specify in the applicable Prospectus Supplement at the exercise price that we describe therein. Unless we otherwise specify in the applicable Prospectus Supplement, holders of the Warrants may exercise the Warrants at any time up to the specified time on the expiration date that we set forth in the applicable Prospectus Supplement. After the close of business on the expiration date, unexercised Warrants will become void.

Holders of the Warrants may exercise the Warrants by delivering the Warrant certificate representing the Warrants to be exercised together with specified information, and paying the required amount to the Warrant Trustee, if any, or to us, as applicable, in immediately available funds, as provided in the applicable Prospectus Supplement. We will set forth on the Warrant certificate and in the applicable Prospectus Supplement the information that the holder of the Warrant will be required to deliver to the Warrant Trustee, if any, or to us, as applicable.

Upon receipt of the required payment and the Warrant certificate properly completed and duly executed at the corporate trust office of the Warrant Trustee, if any, to us at our principal offices, as applicable, or any other office indicated in the applicable Prospectus Supplement, we will issue and deliver the Common Stock or Preferred Stock purchasable upon such exercise. If fewer than all of the Warrants represented by the Warrant certificate are exercised, then we will issue a new Warrant certificate for the remaining amount of Warrants. If we so indicate in the applicable Prospectus Supplement, holders of the Warrants may surrender securities as all or part of the exercise price for Warrants.

### **Anti-Dilution**

The Warrant Indenture, if any, and the Warrant certificate will specify that upon the subdivision, consolidation, reclassification or other material change of the Common Stock or Preferred Stock or any other reorganization, amalgamation, merger or sale of all or substantially all of our assets, the Warrants will thereafter evidence the right of the holder to receive the securities, property or cash deliverable in exchange for or on the conversion of or in respect of the Common Stock or Preferred Stock to which such holder would have been entitled immediately after such event. Similarly, any distribution to all or substantially all of the holders of Common Stock or Preferred Stock of rights, options, warrants, evidences of indebtedness or assets will result in an adjustment in the number of shares of Common Stock or Preferred Stock to be issued to holders of Warrants, as applicable.

## **Global Securities**

We may issue Warrants in whole or in part in the form of one or more global securities, which will be registered in the name of and be deposited with a depository, or its nominee, each of which will be identified in the applicable Prospectus Supplement. The global securities may be in temporary or permanent form. The applicable Prospectus Supplement will describe the terms of any depository arrangement and the rights and limitations of owners of beneficial interests in any global security. The applicable Prospectus Supplement will describe the exchange, registration and transfer rights relating to any global security.

## **Modifications**

The Warrant Indenture, if any, will provide for modifications and alterations to the Warrants issued thereunder by way of a resolution of holders of Warrants at a meeting of such holders or a consent in writing from such holders. The number of holders of Warrants required to pass such a resolution or execute such a written consent will be specified in the Warrant Indenture, if any.

We may amend any Warrant Indenture and the Warrants, without the consent of the holders of the Warrants, to cure any ambiguity, to cure, correct or supplement any defective or inconsistent provision, or in any other manner that will not materially and adversely affect the interests of holders of outstanding Warrants.

## **DESCRIPTION OF RIGHTS**

The following description, together with the additional information we may include in any applicable Prospectus Supplements and free writing prospectuses, summarizes the material terms and provisions of the Rights that we may offer under this Prospectus. Rights may be offered independently or together with Common Stock, Warrants, Preferred Stock or other security, or a combination thereof, and may be attached to or separate from those Securities. While the terms we have summarized below will apply generally to any Rights that we may offer under this Prospectus, we will describe the particular terms of any series of Rights in more detail in the applicable Prospectus Supplement. The terms of any Rights offered under a Prospectus Supplement may differ from the terms described below.

### **General**

Rights may be issued independently or together with any other security and may or may not be transferable. As part of any rights offering, we may enter into a standby underwriting or other arrangement under which the underwriters or any other person would purchase any securities that are not purchased in such rights offering. If we issue Rights, each series of Rights will be issued under a separate rights agreement to be entered into between us and a bank, trust company or transfer agent, as rights agent, that will be named in the applicable Prospectus Supplement. Further terms of the Rights will be stated in the applicable Prospectus Supplement. The rights agent will act solely as our agent and will not assume any obligation to any holders of Rights certificates or beneficial owners of Rights. The rights agreements and rights certificates will be filed with the SEC as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this Prospectus is a part or as an exhibit to a filing incorporated by reference in the registration statement.

The Prospectus Supplement relating to any Rights we offer will describe the specific terms of the offering and the Rights, including the record date for stockholders entitled to the Rights distribution, the number of Rights issued and the number of shares of Common Stock or other securities that may be purchased upon exercise of the Rights, the exercise price of the Rights, the date on which the Rights will become effective and the date on which the Rights will expire, and any applicable U.S. and Canadian federal income tax considerations.

In general, a Right entitles the holder to purchase for cash a specific number of shares of Common Stock or other securities at a specified exercise price. The Rights are normally issued to stockholders as of a specific record date, may be exercised only for a limited period of time and become void following the expiration of such period. If we decide to issue Rights, we will accompany this Prospectus with a Prospectus Supplement that will describe, among other things:

- the number of shares of Common Stock or other securities that may be purchased upon exercise of each Right;
- the exercise price of the Rights;
- the terms for changes to or adjustments in the exercise price, if any;
- whether the Rights are transferable;
- the period during which the Rights may be exercised and when they will expire;
- the steps required to exercise the Rights;
- whether the Rights include “oversubscription rights” so that the holder may purchase more securities if other holders do not purchase their full allotments;
- whether we intend to sell Common Stock or other securities that are not purchased in the rights offering to an underwriter or other purchaser under a contractual “standby” commitment or other arrangement;
- our ability to withdraw or terminate the rights offering;
- material United States and Canadian federal income tax consequences of acquiring, owning, exercising and disposing of Rights; and
- other material terms, including terms relating to transferability, exchange, exercise or amendment of the Rights.

If fewer than all of the Rights issued in any rights offering are exercised, we may offer any unsubscribed securities directly to persons other than stockholders, to or through agents, underwriters or dealers or through a combination of such methods, including pursuant to standby arrangements, as described in the applicable Prospectus Supplement. After the close of business on the expiration date, all unexercised Rights will become void.

Prior to the exercise of a holder’s Rights, the holder will not have any of the rights of holders of the securities issuable upon the exercise of the Rights and will not be entitled to, among other things, vote or receive dividend payments or other distributions on the securities purchasable upon exercise.

### **DESCRIPTION OF SUBSCRIPTION RECEIPTS**

We may issue Subscription Receipts, which will entitle holders to receive upon satisfaction of certain release conditions and for no additional consideration, Common Stock, Warrants, Preferred Stock or any combination thereof. Subscription Receipts will be issued pursuant to one or more subscription receipt agreements (each, a “Subscription Receipt Agreement”), each to be entered into between us and an escrow agent (the “Escrow Agent”), which will establish the terms and conditions of the Subscription Receipts. Each Escrow Agent will be a financial institution organized under the laws of the United States or a state thereof or Canada or a province thereof and authorized to carry on business as a trustee. We will file as exhibits to the registration statement of which this Prospectus is a part, or will incorporate by reference from a Current Report on Form 8-K that we file with the SEC, any Subscription Receipt Agreement describing the terms and conditions of Subscription Receipts we are offering before the issuance of such Subscription Receipts.

The following description sets forth certain general terms and provisions of Subscription Receipts and is not intended to be complete. The statements made in this Prospectus relating to any Subscription Receipt Agreement and Subscription Receipts to be issued thereunder are summaries of certain anticipated provisions thereof and are subject to, and are qualified in their entirety by reference to, all provisions of the applicable Subscription Receipt Agreement and the Prospectus Supplement describing such Subscription Receipt Agreement.

The Prospectus Supplement relating to any Subscription Receipts we offer will describe the Subscription Receipts and include specific terms relating to their offering. All such terms will comply with the requirements of the TSX-V and OTCQX relating to Subscription Receipts. If underwriters or agents are used in the sale of Subscription Receipts, one or more of such underwriters or agents may also be parties to the Subscription Receipt Agreement governing the Subscription Receipts sold to or through such underwriters or agents.

## General

The Prospectus Supplement and the Subscription Receipt Agreement for any Subscription Receipts we offer will describe the specific terms of the Subscription Receipts and may include, but are not limited to, any of the following:

- the designation and aggregate number of Subscription Receipts offered;
- the price at which the Subscription Receipts will be offered;
- the currency or currencies in which the Subscription Receipts will be offered;
- the designation, number and terms of the Common Stock, Warrants, Preferred Stock or combination thereof to be received by holders of Subscription Receipts upon satisfaction of the release conditions, and the procedures that will result in the adjustment of those numbers;
- the conditions (the “Release Conditions”) that must be met in order for holders of Subscription Receipts to receive for no additional consideration Common Stock, Warrants, Preferred Stock or a combination thereof;
- the procedures for the issuance and delivery of Common Stock, Warrants, Preferred Stock or a combination thereof to holders of Subscription Receipts upon satisfaction of the Release Conditions;
- whether any payments will be made to holders of Subscription Receipts upon delivery of the Common Stock, Warrants, Preferred Stock or a combination thereof upon satisfaction of the Release Conditions (e.g., an amount equal to dividends declared on Common Stock or Preferred Stock by us to holders of record during the period from the date of issuance of the Subscription Receipts to the date of issuance of any Common Stock or Preferred Stock pursuant to the terms of the Subscription Receipt Agreement);
- the terms and conditions under which the Escrow Agent will hold all or a portion of the gross proceeds from the sale of Subscription Receipts, together with interest and income earned thereon (collectively, the “Escrowed Funds”), pending satisfaction of the Release Conditions;
- the terms and conditions pursuant to which the Escrow Agent will hold Common Stock or Warrants or Preferred Stock or a combination thereof pending satisfaction of the Release Conditions;
- the terms and conditions under which the Escrow Agent will release all or a portion of the Escrowed Funds to us upon satisfaction of the Release Conditions;
- if the Subscription Receipts are sold to or through underwriters or agents, the terms and conditions under which the Escrow Agent will release a portion of the Escrowed Funds to such underwriters or agents in payment of all or a portion of their fees or commission in connection with the sale of the Subscription Receipts;
- procedures for the refund by the Escrow Agent to holders of Subscription Receipts of all or a portion of the subscription price for their Subscription Receipts, plus any pro rata entitlement to interest earned or income generated on such amount, if the Release Conditions are not satisfied;
- any entitlement of the Company to purchase the Subscription Receipts in the open market by private agreement or otherwise;
- whether we will issue the Subscription Receipts as global securities and, if so, the identity of the depositary for the global securities;
- whether we will issue the Subscription Receipts as bearer securities, registered securities or both;
- provisions as to modification, amendment or variation of the Subscription Receipt Agreement or any rights or terms attaching to the Subscription Receipts;
- the identity of the Escrow Agent;
- whether the Subscription Receipts will be listed on any exchange;
- material United States and Canadian federal tax consequences of acquiring, owning, receiving securities in exchange and disposing of the Subscription Receipts; and
- any other terms of the Subscription Receipts.

In addition, the Prospectus Supplement and the Subscription Receipt Agreement for any Subscription Receipts we offer will describe all contractual rights of rescission that will be granted to initial purchasers of Subscription Receipts in the event this Prospectus, the Prospectus Supplement under which the Subscription Receipts are issued or any amendment hereto or thereto contains a misrepresentation, as discussed further under the sub-paragraph entitled “Rescission” below.

The holders of Subscription Receipts will not be stockholders of the Company. Holders of Subscription Receipts are entitled only to receive Common Stock, Warrants, Preferred Stock or a combination thereof on exchange of their Subscription Receipts, plus any cash payments provided for under the Subscription Receipt Agreement, if the Release Conditions are satisfied. If the Release Conditions are not satisfied, the holders of Subscription Receipts shall be entitled to a refund of all or a portion of the subscription price therefor and all or a portion of the pro rata share of interest earned or income generated thereon, as provided in the Subscription Receipt Agreement.

#### Escrow

The Escrowed Funds will be held in escrow by the Escrow Agent, and such Escrowed Funds will be released to us (and, if the Subscription Receipts are sold to or through underwriters or agents, a portion of the Escrowed Funds may be released to such underwriters or agents in payment of all or a portion of their fees in connection with the sale of the Subscription Receipts) at the time and under the terms specified by the Subscription Receipt Agreement. If the Release Conditions are not satisfied, holders of Subscription Receipts will receive a refund of all or a portion of the subscription price for their Subscription Receipts plus their pro rata entitlement to interest earned or income generated on such amount, in accordance with the terms of the Subscription Receipt Agreement. Common Stock or Warrants or Preferred Stock may be held in escrow by the Escrow Agent, and will be released to the holders of Subscription Receipts following satisfaction of the Release Conditions at the time and under the terms specified in the Subscription Receipt Agreement.

#### Anti-Dilution

The Subscription Receipt Agreement will specify that upon the subdivision, consolidation, reclassification or other material change of the Common Stock or Warrants or Preferred Stock, as applicable, or any other reorganization, amalgamation, merger or sale of all or substantially all of our assets, the Subscription Receipts will thereafter evidence the right of the holder to receive the securities, property or cash deliverable in exchange for or on the conversion of or in respect of the Common Stock or Warrants or Preferred Stock to which the holder of a share of Common Stock or Warrant or share of Preferred Stock would have been entitled immediately after such event. Similarly, any distribution to all or substantially all of the holders of Common Stock or Preferred Stock, as applicable, of rights, options, warrants, evidences of indebtedness or assets will result in an adjustment in the number of shares of Common Stock or Preferred Stock, as applicable, to be issued to holders of Subscription Receipts whose Subscription Receipts entitle the holders thereof to receive Common Stock or Preferred Stock, as applicable. Alternatively, such securities, evidences of indebtedness or assets may, at our option, be issued to the Escrow Agent and delivered to holders of Subscription Receipts on exercise thereof. The Subscription Receipt Agreement will also provide that if other actions of the Company affect the Common Stock or Warrants or Preferred Stock, as applicable, which, in the reasonable opinion of our directors, would materially affect the rights of the holders of Subscription Receipts and/or the rights attached to the Subscription Receipts, the number of shares of Common Stock or Warrants or the number of shares of Preferred Stock, as applicable, which are to be received pursuant to the Subscription Receipts shall be adjusted in such manner, if any, and at such time as our directors may in their discretion reasonably determine to be equitable to the holders of Subscription Receipts in such circumstances.

#### Rescission

The Subscription Receipt Agreement will also provide that any misrepresentation in this Prospectus, the Prospectus Supplement under which the Subscription Receipts are offered, or any amendment thereto, will entitle each initial purchaser of Subscription Receipts to a contractual right of rescission following the issuance of the Common Stock or Warrants or Preferred Stock, as applicable, to such purchaser entitling such purchaser to receive the amount paid for the Subscription Receipts upon surrender of the Common Stock or Warrants or Preferred Stock, as applicable, provided that such remedy for rescission is exercised in the time stipulated in the Subscription Receipt Agreement. This right of rescission does not extend to holders of Subscription Receipts who acquire such Subscription Receipts from an initial purchaser, on the open market or otherwise, or to initial purchasers who acquire Subscription Receipts in the United States.

## Global Securities

We may issue Subscription Receipts in whole or in part in the form of one or more global securities, which will be registered in the name of and be deposited with a depository, or its nominee, each of which will be identified in the applicable Prospectus Supplement. The global securities may be in temporary or permanent form. The applicable Prospectus Supplement will describe the terms of any depository arrangement and the rights and limitations of owners of beneficial interests in any global security. The applicable Prospectus Supplement also will describe the exchange, registration and transfer rights relating to any global security.

### Modifications

The Subscription Receipt Agreement will provide for modifications and alterations to the Subscription Receipts issued thereunder by way of a resolution of holders of Subscription Receipts at a meeting of such holders or a consent in writing from such holders. The number of holders of Subscriptions Receipts required to pass such a resolution or execute such a written consent will be specified in the Subscription Receipt Agreement.

### DESCRIPTION OF PREFERRED STOCK

We are authorized to issue 20,000,000 shares of Preferred Stock with a par value of \$0.00001. As at October 4, 2018, there were no shares of Preferred Stock issued and outstanding.

The Preferred Stock issuable in series will have the rights, privileges, restrictions and conditions assigned to the particular series upon the board of directors of the Company approving their issuance, subject to the Company's articles of continuance. The terms of any Preferred Stock offered under this Prospectus and any related agreements will be described in the Prospectus Supplement filed in respect of the issuance of such Preferred Stock.

### DESCRIPTION OF DEBT SECURITIES

From time to time, debt securities may be offered and sold under this Prospectus. The terms of any debt securities and any related agreements or indentures will be described in a Prospectus Supplement to be filed in respect of such offering

We will provide particular terms and provisions of a series of Debt Securities, and a description of how the general terms and provisions described below may apply to that series, in a Prospectus Supplement. The following summary may not contain all of the information that is important to the investor. For a more complete description, prospective investors should refer to the applicable Prospectus Supplement and to the applicable indenture (the "Indenture"), a copy of which will be distributed in connection with any distribution of Debt Securities under this Prospectus and filed by us with the securities regulatory authorities in Canada and the United States after we have entered into it. The Indenture will be subject to and governed by the U.S. Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended.

The Indenture may not limit the aggregate principal amount of Debt Securities which may be issued under it, and we may issue Debt Securities in one or more series. Securities may be denominated and payable in any currency. We may offer no more than \$100,000,000 (or the equivalent in other currencies) aggregate principal amount of Debt Securities pursuant to this Prospectus. Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable Prospectus Supplement, the Indenture will permit us, without the consent of the holders of any Debt Securities, to issue additional Debt Securities under the Indenture with the same terms and with the same CUSIP numbers as the Debt Securities offered in that series, provided that such additional Debt Securities must be part of the same issue as the Debt Securities offered in that series for U.S. federal income tax purposes.

We may also from time to time repurchase Debt Securities in open market purchases or negotiated transactions without prior notice to holders.

- The applicable Prospectus Supplement will set forth the following terms relating to the Debt Securities offered by such Prospectus Supplement:
- the title of the Debt Securities;
- the total principal amount of the Debt Securities;
- whether the Debt Securities will be issued in individual certificates to each holder or in the form of temporary or permanent global Debt Securities held by a depository on behalf of holders;
- the date or dates on which the principal of and any premium on the Debt Securities will be payable;

- any interest rate, the date from which interest will accrue, interest payment dates and record dates for interest payments and whether and under what circumstances any additional amounts with respect to the Debt Securities will be payable;
- the place or places where payments on the Debt Securities will be payable;
- any provisions for optional redemption, early repayment, retraction, purchase for cancellation or surrender;
- any sinking fund or other provisions that would require the redemption, purchase or repayment of Debt Securities;
- whether payments on the Debt Securities will be payable in a foreign currency or currency units or another form;
- the portion of the principal amount of Debt Securities that will be payable if the maturity is accelerated, other than the entire principal amount;
- events of default by the Company and covenants of the Company;
- any restrictions or other provisions relating to the transfer or exchange of Debt Securities;
- any provisions permitting or restricting the issuance of additional securities, the incurring of additional indebtedness and other material negative covenants including restrictions against payment of dividends and restrictions against giving security on our assets or the assets of our subsidiaries;
- the rank and terms of subordination of any series of subordinate debt;
- whether or not the Debt Securities will be secured or unsecured, and the terms of any secured debt including a general description of the collateral and of the material terms of any related security, pledge or other agreements;
- any terms for the conversion or exchange of the Debt Securities for other securities of the Company or any other entity, or for the redemption on maturity through the issuance of Common Stock or any other securities of the Company; and
- any other terms of the Debt Securities not prohibited by the Indenture.

Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable Prospectus Supplement, the holders of the Debt Securities will not be afforded protection under the Indenture in the event of a highly leveraged transaction or a change in control of the Company, except in certain specified circumstances.

We may issue Debt Securities under the Indenture bearing no interest or interest at a rate below the prevailing market rate at the time of issuance and, in such circumstances, we will offer and sell those Securities at a discount below their stated principal amount. We will describe in the applicable Prospectus Supplement any material Canadian and U.S. federal income tax consequences and other special considerations.

Neither we nor any of our subsidiaries will be subject to any financial covenants under the Indenture. In addition, neither we nor any of our subsidiaries will be restricted under the Indenture from paying dividends, incurring debt, or issuing or repurchasing its securities.

As further described in any Prospectus Supplement, any Debt Securities issued by us may be secured or unsecured obligations of the Company and may be senior or subordinate debt. As of the date of this Prospectus, we and our subsidiaries had a total indebtedness of \$2,132,000, consisting of a term loan facility and a secured loan, and we also have outstanding convertible notes in the aggregate principle amount of \$1,600,000 and convertible debentures in the aggregate principal amount of CDN\$7,581,000.

We may issue Debt Securities and incur additional indebtedness otherwise than through the offering of any Debt Securities pursuant to this Prospectus.

#### **Ranking and Other Indebtedness**

Unless otherwise indicated in an applicable prospectus supplement, our debt securities will be unsecured obligations and will rank equally with all of our other unsecured and unsubordinated debt from time to time outstanding and equally with other securities issued under the indenture. The debt securities will be structurally subordinated to all existing and future liabilities, including trade payables, of our subsidiaries.

Our board of directors may establish the extent and manner, if any, to which payment on or in respect of a series of debt securities will be senior or will be subordinated to the prior payment of our other liabilities and obligations and whether the payment of principal, premium, if any, and interest, if any, will be guaranteed by any other person and the nature and priority of any security.

## **Debt Securities in Global Form**

### *The Depositary and Book-Entry*

Unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, a series of the debt securities may be issued in whole or in part in global form as a “global security” and will be registered in the name of and be deposited with a depository, or its nominee, each of which will be identified in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to that series. Unless and until exchanged, in whole or in part, for the debt securities in definitive registered form, a global security may not be transferred except as a whole by the depository for such global security to a nominee of the depository, by a nominee of the depository to the depository or another nominee of the depository or by the depository or any such nominee to a successor of the depository or a nominee of the successor.

The specific terms of the depository arrangement with respect to any portion of a particular series of the debt securities to be represented by a global security will be described in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to such series. We anticipate that the provisions described in this section will apply to all depository arrangements.

Upon the issuance of a global security, the depository therefor or its nominee will credit, on its book entry and registration system, the respective principal amounts of the debt securities represented by the global security to the accounts of such persons, designated as “participants”, having accounts with such depository or its nominee. Such accounts shall be designated by the underwriters, dealers or agents participating in the distribution of the debt securities or by us if such debt securities are offered and sold directly by us. Ownership of beneficial interests in a global security will be limited to participants or persons that may hold beneficial interests through participants. Ownership of beneficial interests in a global security will be shown on, and the transfer of that ownership will be effected only through, records maintained by the depository therefor or its nominee (with respect to interests of participants) or by participants or persons that hold through participants (with respect to interests of persons other than participants). The laws of some states in the United States may require that certain purchasers of securities take physical delivery of such securities in definitive form.

So long as the depository for a global security or its nominee is the registered owner of the global security, such depository or such nominee, as the case may be, will be considered the sole owner or holder of the debt securities represented by the global security for all purposes under the indenture. Except as provided below, owners of beneficial interests in a global security will not be entitled to have a series of the debt securities represented by the global security registered in their names, will not receive or be entitled to receive physical delivery of such series of the debt securities in definitive form and will not be considered the owners or holders thereof under the indenture.

Any payments of principal, premium, if any, and interest, if any, on global securities registered in the name of a depository or its nominee will be made to the depository or its nominee, as the case may be, as the registered owner of the global security representing such debt securities. None of us, the trustee or any paying agent for the debt securities represented by the global securities will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the records relating to or payments made on account of beneficial ownership interests of the global security or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records relating to such beneficial ownership interests.

We expect that the depository for a global security or its nominee, upon receipt of any payment of principal, premium, if any, or interest, if any, will credit participants’ accounts with payments in amounts proportionate to their respective beneficial interests in the principal amount of the global security as shown on the records of such depository or its nominee. We also expect that payments by participants to owners of beneficial interests in a global security held through such participants will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is now the case with securities held for the accounts of customers registered in “street name”, and will be the responsibility of such participants.

### *Discontinuance of Depositary's Services*

If a depositary for a global security representing a particular series of the debt securities is at any time unwilling or unable to continue as depositary and a successor depositary is not appointed by us within 90 days, we will issue such series of the debt securities in definitive form in exchange for a global security representing such series of the debt securities. If an event of default under the indenture has occurred and is continuing, debt securities in definitive form will be printed and delivered upon written request by the holder to the trustee. In addition, we may at any time and in our sole discretion determine not to have a series of the debt securities represented by a global security and, in such event, will issue a series of the debt securities in definitive form in exchange for all of the global securities representing that series of debt securities.

### **Debt Securities in Definitive Form**

A series of the debt securities may be issued in definitive form, solely as registered securities, solely as unregistered securities or as both registered securities and unregistered securities. Registered securities will be issuable in denominations of US\$1,000 and integral multiples of US\$1,000 and unregistered securities will be issuable in denominations of US\$5,000 and integral multiples of US\$5,000 or, in each case, in such other denominations as may be set out in the terms of the debt securities of any particular series. Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, unregistered securities will have interest coupons attached.

Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, payment of principal, premium, if any, and interest, if any, on the debt securities (other than global securities) will be made at the office or agency of the trustee, or at our option we can pay principal, interest, if any, and premium, if any, by check mailed or delivered to the address of the person entitled at the address appearing in the security register of the trustee or electronic funds wire or other transmission to an account of the person entitled to receive payments. Unless otherwise indicated in the applicable prospectus supplement, payment of interest, if any, will be made to the persons in whose name the debt securities are registered at the close of business on the day or days specified by us.

At the option of the holder of debt securities, registered securities of any series will be exchangeable for other registered securities of the same series, of any authorized denomination and of a like aggregate principal amount and tenor. If, but only if, provided in an applicable prospectus supplement, unregistered securities (with all unmatured coupons, except as provided below, and all matured coupons in default) of any series may be exchanged for registered securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of a like aggregate principal amount and tenor. In such event, unregistered securities surrendered in a permitted exchange for registered securities between a regular record date or a special record date and the relevant date for payment of interest shall be surrendered without the coupon relating to such date for payment of interest, and interest will not be payable on such date for payment of interest in respect of the registered security issued in exchange for such unregistered security, but will be payable only to the holder of such coupon when due in accordance with the terms of the indenture. Unless otherwise specified in an applicable prospectus supplement, unregistered securities will not be issued in exchange for registered securities.

The applicable prospectus supplement may indicate the places to register a transfer of the debt securities in definitive form. Except for certain restrictions set forth in the indenture, no service charge will be payable by the holder for any registration of transfer or exchange of the debt securities in definitive form, but we may, in certain instances, require a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charges payable in connection with these transactions.

We shall not be required to:

- issue, register the transfer of or exchange any series of the debt securities in definitive form during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before any selection of securities of that series of the debt securities to be redeemed and ending on the relevant redemption date if the debt securities for which such issuance, registration or exchange is requested may be among those selected for redemption;
- register the transfer of or exchange any registered security in definitive form, or portion thereof, called for redemption, except the unredeemed portion of any registered security being redeemed in part;
- exchange any unregistered security called for redemption except to the extent that such unregistered security may be exchanged for a registered security of that series and like tenor; provided that such registered security will be simultaneously surrendered for redemption with written instructions for payment consistent with the provisions of the indenture; or
- issue, register the transfer of or exchange any of the debt securities in definitive form which have been surrendered for repayment at the option of the holder, except the portion, if any, thereof not to be so repaid

## **Merger, Conversion or Consolidation**

The indenture will provide that we may not consolidate or merge with or into any other person, enter into any statutory arrangement with any person or convey, transfer or lease our properties and assets substantially as an entirety to another person, unless among other items:

- we are the surviving person, or the resulting, surviving or transferee person, if other than us, is organized and existing under the laws of the United States, any state thereof or the District of Columbia, Canada, or any province or territory thereof, or, if the amalgamation, merger, consolidation, statutory arrangement or other transaction would not impair the rights of holders, any other country;
- the successor person (if not us) assumes all of our obligations under the debt securities and the indenture; and
- we or such successor person will not be in default under the indenture immediately after the transaction.

When such a person assumes our obligations in such circumstances, subject to certain exceptions, we shall be discharged from all obligations under the debt securities and the indenture.

## **Provision of Financial Information**

We will file with the trustee, within 20 days after we file or furnish them with the SEC, copies of our annual reports and of the information, documents and other reports (or copies of such portions of any of the foregoing as the SEC may by rules and regulations prescribe) which we are required to file or furnish with the SEC pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act.

## **Events of Default**

Unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement relating to a particular series of debt securities, the following is a summary of events which will, with respect to any series of the debt securities, constitute an event of default under the indenture with respect to the debt securities of that series:

- we fail to pay principal of, or any premium on, any debt security of that series when it is due and payable;
- we fail to pay interest or any additional amounts payable on any debt security of that series when it becomes due and payable, and such default continues for 30 days;
- we fail to make any required sinking fund or analogous payment for that series of debt securities;
- we fail to observe or perform any of the covenants described in the section “—, Merger, Conversion or Consolidation” for a period of 30 days;
- we fail to comply with any of our other agreements in the indenture that affect or are applicable to the debt securities for 60 days after written notice by the trustee or to us and the trustee by holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of any series affected thereby;
- a default (as defined in any indenture or instrument under which we or one of our subsidiaries has at the time of the indenture relating to this prospectus or will thereafter have outstanding any indebtedness) has occurred and is continuing, or we or any of our subsidiaries has failed to pay principal amounts with respect to such indebtedness at maturity and such event of default or failure to pay has resulted in such indebtedness under such indentures or instruments being declared due, payable or otherwise being accelerated, in either event so that an amount in excess of the greater of US\$5,000,000 and 2% of our shareholders’ equity will be or become due, payable and accelerated upon such declaration or prior to the date on which the same would otherwise have become due, payable and accelerated (the “Accelerated Indebtedness”) and such acceleration will not be rescinded or annulled, or such event of default or failure to pay under such indenture or instrument will not be remedied or cured, whether by payment or otherwise, or waived by the holders of such Accelerated Indebtedness, then (i) if the Accelerated Indebtedness will be as a result of an event of default which is not related to the failure to pay principal or interest on the terms, at the times, and on the conditions set out in any such indenture or instrument, it will not be considered an event of default for the purposes of the indenture governing the debt securities relating to this prospectus until 30 days after such indebtedness has been accelerated, or (ii) if the Accelerated Indebtedness will occur as a result of such failure to pay principal or interest or as a result of an event of default which is related to the failure to pay principal or interest on the terms, at the times, and on the conditions set out in any such indenture or instrument, then (A) if such Accelerated Indebtedness is, by its terms, non-recourse to us or our subsidiaries, it will be considered an event of default for purposes of the indenture governing the debt securities relating to this prospectus; or (B) if such Accelerated Indebtedness is recourse to us or our subsidiaries, any requirement in connection with such failure to pay or event of default for the giving of notice or the lapse of time or the happening of any further condition, event or act under such indenture or instrument in connection with such failure to pay or event of default will be applicable together with an additional seven days before being considered an event of default for the purposes of the indenture relating to this prospectus;
- certain events involving our bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization; and
- any other event of default provided for in that series of debt securities.

A default under one series of debt securities will not necessarily be a default under another series. The trustee may withhold notice to the holders of the debt securities of any default, except in the payment of principal or premium, if any, or interest, if any, if in good faith it considers it in the interests of the holders to do so.

If an event of default for any series of debt securities occurs and continues, the trustee or the holders of at least 25% in aggregate principal amount of the debt securities of that series, subject to any subordination provisions, may require us to repay immediately:

- the entire principal and interest and premium, if any, of the debt securities of the series; or
- if the debt securities are discounted securities, that portion of the principal as is described in the applicable prospectus supplement.

If an event of default relates to events involving our bankruptcy, insolvency or reorganization, the principal of all debt securities will become immediately due and payable without any action by the trustee or any holder. Subject to certain conditions, the holders of a majority of the aggregate principal amount of the debt securities of the affected series can rescind this accelerated payment requirement. If debt securities are discounted securities, the applicable prospectus supplement will contain provisions relating to the acceleration of maturity of a portion of the principal amount of the discounted securities upon the occurrence or continuance of an event of default.

Other than its duties in case of a default, the trustee is not obligated to exercise any of the rights or powers that it will have under the indenture at the request, order or direction of any holders, unless the holders offer the trustee reasonable indemnity. If they provide this reasonable indemnity, the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of any series of debt securities may, subject to certain limitations, direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding or any remedy available to the trustee, or exercising any power conferred upon the trustee, for any series of debt securities.

We will be required to furnish to the trustee a statement annually as to our compliance with all conditions and covenants under the indenture and, if we are not in compliance, we must specify any defaults. We will also be required to notify the trustee as soon as practicable upon becoming aware of any event of default.

No holder of a debt security of any series will have any right to institute any proceeding with respect to the indenture, or for the appointment of a receiver or a trustee, or for any other remedy, unless:

- the holder has previously given to the trustee written notice of a continuing event of default with respect to the debt securities of the affected series;
- the holders of at least 25% in principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of the series affected by an event of default have made a written request, and the holders have offered reasonable indemnity, to the trustee to institute a proceeding as trustee; and
- the trustee has failed to institute a proceeding, and has not received from the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of the series affected by an event of default a direction inconsistent with the request, within 60 days after their notice, request and offer of indemnity.

However, such above-mentioned limitations do not apply to a suit instituted by the holder of a debt security for the enforcement of payment of the principal of or any premium, if any, or interest on such debt security on or after the applicable due date specified in such debt security.

### **Defeasance**

When we use the term “defeasance”, we mean discharge from some or all of our obligations under the indenture. Unless otherwise specified in the applicable prospectus supplement, if we deposit with the trustee sufficient cash or government securities to pay the principal, interest, if any, premium, if any, and any other sums due to the stated maturity date or a redemption date of the debt securities of a series, then at our option:

- we will be discharged from the obligations with respect to the debt securities of that series; or
- we will no longer be under any obligation to comply with certain restrictive covenants under the indenture, and certain events of default will no longer apply to us.
- if this happens, the holders of the debt securities of the affected series will not be entitled to the benefits of the indenture except for registration of transfer and exchange of debt securities and the replacement of lost, stolen or mutilated debt securities. These holders may look only to the deposited fund for payment on their debt securities.
- to exercise our defeasance option, we must deliver to the trustee:
- an opinion of counsel in the United States to the effect that the holders of the outstanding debt securities of the affected series will not recognize a gain or loss for U.S. federal income tax purposes as a result of a defeasance and will be subject to U.S. federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if the defeasance had not occurred;
- an opinion of counsel in Canada or a ruling from the Canada Revenue Agency to the effect that the holders of the outstanding debt securities of the affected series will not recognize income, or a gain or loss for Canadian federal, provincial or territorial income or other tax purposes as a result of a defeasance and will be subject to Canadian federal, provincial or territorial income tax and other tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case had the defeasance not occurred; and
- a certificate of one of our officers and an opinion of counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent provided for relating to defeasance have been complied with.

If we are to be discharged from our obligations with respect to the debt securities, and not just from our covenants, the U.S. opinion must be based upon a ruling from or published by the United States Internal Revenue Service or a change in law to that effect.

In addition to the delivery of the opinions described above, the following conditions must be met before we may exercise our defeasance option:

- no event of default or event that, with the passing of time or the giving of notice, or both, shall constitute an event of default shall have occurred and be continuing for the debt securities of the affected series;
- we are not an “insolvent person” within the meaning of applicable bankruptcy and insolvency legislation;
- and
- other customary conditions precedent are satisfied.

### **Modification and Waiver**

Modifications and amendments of the indenture may be made by us and the trustee with the consent of the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding debt securities of each series affected by the modification. However, without the consent of each holder affected, no modification may:

- change the stated maturity of the principal of, premium, if any, or any installment of interest, if any, on any debt security;
- reduce the principal, premium, if any, or rate of interest, if any, or any obligation to pay any additional amounts;
- reduce the amount of principal of a debt security payable upon acceleration of its maturity;
- change the place or currency of any payment;
- affect the holder's right to require us to repurchase the debt securities at the holder's option;
- impair the right of the holders to institute a suit to enforce their rights to payment;
- adversely affect any conversion or exchange right related to a series of debt securities;
- change the percentage of debt securities required to modify the indenture or to waive compliance with certain provisions of the indenture; or
- reduce the percentage in principal amount of outstanding debt securities necessary to take certain actions.

The holders of a majority in principal amount of outstanding debt securities of any series may on behalf of the holders of all debt securities of that series waive, insofar as only that series is concerned, past defaults under the indenture and compliance by us with certain restrictive provisions of the indenture. However, these holders may not waive a default in any payment on any debt security or compliance with a provision that cannot be modified without the consent of each holder affected.

We may modify the indenture without the consent of the holders to:

- evidence our successor under the indenture;
- add covenants or surrender any right or power for the benefit of holders;
- add events of default;
- provide for unregistered securities to become registered securities under the indenture and make other such changes to unregistered securities that in each case do not materially and adversely affect the interests of holders of outstanding securities;
- establish the forms of the debt securities;
- appoint a successor trustee under the indenture;
- add provisions to permit or facilitate the defeasance or discharge of the debt securities as long as there is no material adverse effect on the holders;
- cure any ambiguity, correct or supplement any defective or inconsistent provision, make any other provisions in each case that would not materially and adversely affect the interests of holders of outstanding securities and related coupons, if any;
- comply with any applicable laws of the United States and Canada in order to effect and maintain the qualification of the indenture under the Trust Indenture Act; or
- change or eliminate any provisions where such change takes effect when there are no securities outstanding under the indenture.

### **Governing Law**

The indenture and the debt securities will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York.

### **The Trustee**

The trustee under the indenture or its affiliates may provide banking and other services to us in the ordinary course of their business.

The indenture will contain certain limitations on the rights of the trustee, as long as it or any of its affiliates remains our creditor, to obtain payment of claims in certain cases or to realize on certain property received on any claim as security or otherwise. The trustee and its affiliates will be permitted to engage in other transactions with us. If the trustee or any affiliate acquires any conflicting interest and a default occurs with respect to the debt securities, the trustee must eliminate the conflict or resign.

## **Resignation of Trustee**

The trustee may resign or be removed with respect to one or more series of the debt securities and a successor trustee may be appointed to act with respect to such series. In the event that two or more persons are acting as trustee with respect to different series of debt securities, each such trustee shall be a trustee of a trust under the indenture separate and apart from the trust administered by any other such trustee, and any action described herein to be taken by the “trustee” may then be taken by each such trustee with respect to, and only with respect to, the one or more series of debt securities for which it is trustee.

## **Consent to Service**

In connection with the indenture, we will designate and appoint CT Corporation System, 111 Eighth Avenue, New York, New York, 10011, as our authorized agent upon which process may be served in any suit or proceeding arising out of or relating to the indenture or the debt securities that may be instituted in any U.S. federal or New York state court located in the Borough of Manhattan, in the City of New York, or brought by the trustee (whether in its individual capacity or in its capacity as trustee under the indenture), and will irrevocably submit to the non-exclusive jurisdiction of such courts.

## **Enforceability of Judgments**

Since all or substantially all of our assets, as well as the assets of some of our directors and officers, are outside the United States, any judgment obtained in the United States against us or certain of our directors or officers, including judgments with respect to the payment of principal on the debt securities, may not be collectible within the United States.

We have been advised that there is doubt as to the enforceability in Canada by a court in original actions, or in actions to enforce judgments of U.S. courts, of civil liabilities predicated solely upon the U.S. federal securities laws.

## **DESCRIPTION OF UNITS**

The following description, together with the additional information we may include in any applicable Prospectus Supplements, summarizes the material terms and provisions of the Units that we may offer under this Prospectus. While the terms we have summarized below will apply generally to any Units that we may offer under this Prospectus, we will describe the particular terms of any series of Units in more detail in the applicable Prospectus Supplement. The terms of any Units offered under a Prospectus Supplement may differ from the terms described below.

We will file as exhibits to the registration statement of which this Prospectus is a part, or will incorporate by reference from a current report on Form 8-K that we file with the SEC, the form of unit agreement (which we refer to herein as the “Unit Agreement”), if any, between us and a unit agent (which we refer to herein as the “Unit Agent”) that describes the terms and conditions of the series of Units we are offering, and any supplemental agreements, before the issuance of the related series of Units. The following summaries of material terms and provisions of the Units are subject to, and qualified in their entirety by reference to, all the provisions of the Unit Agreement, if any, and any supplemental agreements applicable to a particular series of Units. We urge you to read the applicable Prospectus Supplements related to the particular series of Units that we sell under this Prospectus, as well as the complete Unit Agreement, if any, and any supplemental agreements that contain the terms of the Units.

## **General**

We may issue Units comprising one or more shares of Common Stock, Warrants, Rights, shares of Preferred Stock, Subscription Receipts or Debt Securities, in any combination. Each Unit will be issued so that the holder of the Unit is also the holder of each security included in the Unit. Thus, the holder of a Unit will have the rights and obligations of a holder of each included security. Units may be issued under a Unit Agreement. Any Unit Agreement under which a Unit may be issued may provide that the securities included in the Unit may not be held or transferred separately, at any time or at any time before a specified date.

- We will describe in the applicable Prospectus Supplement the terms of the series of Units, including:
- the designation and terms of the Units and of the securities comprising the Units, including whether and under what circumstances those securities may be held or transferred separately;
- the provisions of any governing Unit Agreement;
- material United States and Canadian federal income tax consequences of acquiring, owning, exercising, and disposing of the Units; and
- any provisions for the issuance, payment, settlement, transfer or exchange of the Units or of the securities comprising the Units.

The provisions described in this section, as well as those described under “Description of Common Stock”, “Description of Warrants”, “Description of Rights”, “Description of Subscription Receipts”, “Description of Preferred Stock” and “Description of Debt Securities”, will apply to each Unit and to any share of Common Stock, Warrant Right, share of Preferred Stock, Subscription Receipt or Debt Security included in each Unit, respectively.

#### **Issuance in Series**

We may issue Units in such amounts and in numerous distinct series as we determine.

### **PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION**

#### **General**

We may offer and sell the Securities, separately or together: (a) to one or more underwriters or dealers; (b) through one or more agents; or (c) directly to one or more other purchasers. The Securities offered pursuant to any Prospectus Supplement may be sold from time to time in one or more transactions at: (i) a fixed price or prices, which may be changed from time to time; (ii) market prices prevailing at the time of sale; (iii) prices related to such prevailing market prices; or (iv) other negotiated prices, including sales in transactions that are deemed to be “at-the-market” distributions, including sales made directly on the TSX-V, OTCQX or other existing trading markets for the securities. We may only offer and sell the Securities pursuant to a Prospectus Supplement during the period that this Prospectus, including any amendments hereto, remains effective. The Prospectus Supplement for any of the Securities being offered thereby will set forth the terms of the offering of such Securities, including the type of Security(ies) being offered, the name or names of any underwriters, dealers or agents, the purchase price of such Securities, the proceeds or consideration to us from such sale, any underwriting commissions or discounts and other items constituting underwriters’ compensation and any discounts or concessions allowed or re-allowed or paid to dealers. Only underwriters so named in the Prospectus Supplement are deemed to be underwriters in connection with the Securities offered thereby.

#### **By Underwriters**

If underwriters are used in the sale, the Securities will be acquired by the underwriters for their own account and may be resold from time to time in one or more transactions, including negotiated transactions, at a fixed public offering price or at varying prices determined at the time of sale. Unless otherwise set forth in the Prospectus Supplement relating thereto, the obligations of underwriters to purchase the Securities will be subject to certain conditions, but the underwriters will be obligated to purchase all of the Securities offered by the Prospectus Supplement if any of such Securities are purchased. We may offer the Securities to the public through underwriting syndicates represented by managing underwriters or by underwriters without a syndicate. We may agree to pay the underwriters a fee or commission for various services relating to the offering of any Securities. Any such fee or commission will be paid out of our general corporate funds. We may use underwriters with whom we have a material relationship. We will describe in the Prospectus Supplement, naming the underwriter, the nature of any such relationship.

#### **By Dealers**

If dealers are used, and if so specified in the applicable Prospectus Supplement, we will sell such Securities to the dealers as principals. The dealers may then resell such Securities to the public at varying prices to be determined by such dealers at the time of resale. Any public offering price and any discounts or concessions allowed or re-allowed or paid to dealers may be changed from time to time. We will set forth the names of the dealers and the terms of the transaction in the applicable Prospectus Supplement.

**By Agents**

The Securities may also be sold through agents designated by us. Any agent involved will be named, and any fees or commissions payable by us to such agent will be set forth, in the applicable Prospectus Supplement. Any such fees or commissions will be paid out of our general corporate funds. Unless otherwise indicated in the Prospectus Supplement, any agent will be acting on a best efforts basis for the period of its appointment.

**Direct Sales**

Securities may also be sold directly by us at such prices and upon such terms as agreed to by us and the purchaser. In this case, no underwriters, dealers or agents may be involved in the offering.

**General Information**

Underwriters, dealers and agents that participate in the distribution of the Securities offered by this Prospectus may be deemed underwriters under the Securities Act, and any discounts or commissions they receive from us and any profit on their resale of the Securities may be treated as underwriting discounts and commissions under the Securities Act.

Underwriters, dealers or agents who participate in the distribution of Securities may be entitled under agreements to be entered into with us to indemnification by us against certain liabilities, including liabilities under Canadian provincial and territorial and United States securities legislation, or to contribution with respect to payments which such underwriters, dealers or agents may be required to make in respect thereof. Such underwriters, dealers or agents may be customers of, engage in transactions with, or perform services for, us in the ordinary course of business.

We may enter into derivative transactions with third parties, or sell securities not covered by this Prospectus to third parties in privately negotiated transactions. If the applicable Prospectus Supplement indicates, in connection with those derivatives, the third parties may sell Securities covered by this Prospectus and the applicable Prospectus Supplement, including in short sale transactions. If so, the third parties may use securities pledged by us or borrowed from us or others to settle those sales or to close out any related open borrowings of stock, and may use securities received from us in settlement of those derivatives to close out any related open borrowings of stock. The third parties in such sale transactions will be identified in the applicable Prospectus Supplement.

One or more firms, referred to as “remarketing firms,” may also offer or sell the Securities, if the Prospectus Supplement so indicates, in connection with a remarketing arrangement upon their purchase. Remarketing firms will act as principals for their own accounts or as agents for us. These remarketing firms will offer or sell the Securities in accordance with the terms of the Securities. The Prospectus Supplement will identify any remarketing firm and the terms of its agreement, if any, with us and will describe the remarketing firm’s compensation. Remarketing firms may be deemed to be underwriters in connection with the Securities they remarket.

In connection with any offering of Securities, underwriters may over-allot or effect transactions which stabilize or maintain the market price of the Securities offered at a level above that which might otherwise prevail in the open market. Such transactions may be commenced, interrupted or discontinued at any time.

**LEGAL MATTERS**

The validity of the Securities offered hereby will be passed upon by Dorsey & Whitney, LLP.

**EXPERTS**

IntelGenx Technologies Corp. financial statements for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016 included in this registration statement have been audited by Richter, LLP, Montreal, Quebec, an independent registered public accounting firm, as stated in their report, and have been so included in reliance upon the report of said firm and their authority as experts in accounting and auditing. This report expresses an unqualified opinion.

## WHERE YOU CAN FIND ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

We file reports and other information with the Securities and Exchange Commission. We have also filed a registration statement on Form S-3, including exhibits, with the SEC with respect to the Securities covered by this Prospectus. This Prospectus is part of the registration statement, but it does not contain all of the information included in the registration statement or exhibits. For further information with respect to us and our securities, we refer you to the registration statement and to the exhibits and schedules to the registration statement. Statements contained in this Prospectus as to the contents of any contract or any other document referred to are not necessarily complete, and in each instance, we refer you to the copy of the contract or other document filed as an exhibit to the registration statement. Each of these statements is qualified in all respects by this reference. You may inspect a copy of the registration statement and other reports we file with the Securities and Exchange Commission without charge at the SEC's principal office in Washington, D.C., and copies of all or any part of the registration statement may be obtained from the Public Reference Section of the SEC, 100 F Street NE, Washington, D.C. 20549, upon payment of fees prescribed by the SEC. The SEC maintains an internet site that contains reports, proxy and information statements and other information regarding registrants that file electronically with the SEC. The address of the Web site is <http://www.sec.gov>. The SEC's toll free investor information service can be reached at 1-800-SEC-0330.

## DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

The SEC allows us to incorporate by reference the information contained in documents that we file with them. We are incorporating by reference into this Prospectus the documents listed below (excluding any information furnished under Items 2.02 or 7.01 in any Current Report on Form 8-K):

- Our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2017 that we filed with the SEC on March 29, 2018;
- Our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended March 31, 2018 that we filed with the SEC on May 10, 2018;
- Our Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended June 30, 2018 that we filed with the SEC on August 9, 2018;
- Our Proxy Statement on Schedule 14A that we filed with the SEC on March 29, 2018 (the "Proxy Statement");
- Our Current Reports on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on January 26, 2018 and May 10, 2018; and
- The description of the Registrant's shares of common stock set forth in the registration statement on Form 10SB12G, and any amendments thereto, registering the registrant's common stock under Section 12 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, which was filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on July 28, 2000, including any amendments or reports filed for the purpose of updating such description.

By incorporating by reference our Annual Report on Form 10-K, and our Proxy Statement, we can disclose important information to you by referring you to our Annual Report on Form 10-K, and our Proxy Statement, which are considered part of this Prospectus.

Any statement contained in a document incorporated or deemed to be incorporated by reference into this Prospectus will be deemed to be modified or superseded for purposes of this Prospectus to the extent that a statement contained in this Prospectus or any other subsequently filed document that is deemed to be incorporated by reference into this Prospectus modifies or supersedes the statement. Any statement so modified or superseded will not be deemed, except as so modified or superseded, to constitute a part of this Prospectus.

All documents that we file with the SEC pursuant to Sections 13(a), 13(c), 14 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, after the effective date of the initial registration statement of which this Prospectus is a part and all such documents that we file with the SEC after the date of this Prospectus and before the termination of the offering of our Securities shall be deemed incorporated by reference into this Prospectus and to be a part of this Prospectus from the respective dates of filing such documents. Unless specifically stated to the contrary, none of the information that we disclose under Items 2.02 or 7.01 of any Current Report on Form 8-K that we may from time to time furnish to the SEC will be incorporated by reference into, or otherwise included in, this Prospectus.

Any statement contained in a document incorporated by reference in this Prospectus shall be deemed to be modified or superseded for purposes of this Prospectus to the extent that a statement contained in this Prospectus or in any other subsequently filed document that also is or is deemed to be incorporated by reference in this Prospectus modifies or supersedes such statement. Any statement so modified or superseded shall not be deemed, except as so modified or superseded, to constitute a part of this Prospectus.

Copies of the documents incorporated by reference in this Prospectus may be obtained on written or oral request without charge from our Corporate Secretary at 6420 Abrams, Ville Saint Laurent, Quebec H4S 1Y2, Canada (telephone: (514) 331-7440).

We also maintain a web site at <http://www.intelgenx.com> through which you can obtain copies of documents that we have filed with the SEC. The contents of that site are not incorporated by reference into or otherwise a part of this Prospectus.

**PART II**  
**INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN PROSPECTUS**

**Item 13. Other Expenses of Issuance and Distribution**

The following table sets forth the costs and expenses payable by us in connection with the distribution of the securities being registered. All of the amounts shown are estimates, except the SEC registration fee. We have agreed to bear all expenses (other than underwriting discounts and selling commissions) in connection with the registration and sale of the securities offered hereby.

|                                |    |        |
|--------------------------------|----|--------|
| SEC registration fee           | \$ | 12,450 |
| FINRA filing fee               | \$ | 15,500 |
| Legal fees and expenses        | \$ | 40,000 |
| Accountants' fees and expenses | \$ | 10,000 |
| Printing expenses              | \$ | 5,000  |
| <b>Total:</b>                  | \$ | 82,950 |

**Item 14. Indemnification of Directors and Officers**

Section 145 of the Delaware General Corporation Law (the "DGCL"), provides that a corporation may indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending or completed action, suit or proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative or investigative (other than an action by or in the right of the corporation) by reason of the fact that he is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust or other enterprise, against expenses (including attorneys' fees), judgments, fines and amounts paid in settlement actually and reasonably incurred by him in connection with such action, suit or proceeding if he acted in good faith and in a manner he reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation, and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe his conduct was unlawful. Section 145 further provides that a corporation similarly may indemnify any such person serving in any such capacity who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending or completed action or suit by or in the right of the corporation to procure a judgment in its favor, against expenses (including attorneys' fees) actually and reasonably incurred in connection with the defense or settlement of such action or suit if he acted in good faith and in a manner he reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation and except that no indemnification shall be made in respect of any claim, issue or matter as to which such person shall have been adjudged to be liable to the corporation unless and only to the extent that the Delaware Court of Chancery or such other court in which such action or suit was brought shall determine upon application that, despite the adjudication of liability but in view of all the circumstances of the case, such person is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnity for such expenses which the Court of Chancery or such other court shall deem proper.

We have agreed to indemnify our officers and directors to the fullest extent permitted by law. Such indemnification is intended to supplement our officers' and directors' liability insurance.

Our certificate of incorporation provides that no director shall be personally liable to the corporation or its stockholders for monetary damages for any breach of fiduciary duty by such director as a director. A director shall be liable to the extent provided by applicable law, however, (a) for breach of the director's duty of loyalty to the corporation or its stockholders, (b) for acts or omissions not in good faith or which involve intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law, (c) pursuant to Section 174 of the DGCL, or (d) for any transaction from which the director derived an improper personal benefit.

To the extent permitted by applicable law, we are also authorized to provide indemnification of (and advancement of expenses to) such agents (and any other persons to which Delaware law permits us to provide indemnification) through provisions in our bylaws, agreements with such agents or other persons, voting of security holders or disinterested directors or otherwise, in excess of the indemnification and advancement otherwise permitted by Section 145 of the DGCL, subject only to limits created by applicable Delaware law (statutory or non-statutory), with respect to actions for breach of duty to us, our security holders and others.

Any repeal or modification of any of the foregoing provisions of the indemnification provisions in our certificate of incorporation or bylaws shall be prospective and shall not adversely affect any right or protection of a director, officer, agent, or other person existing at the time of, or increase the liability of any director of our company with respect to any acts or omissions of such director occurring prior to, such repeal or modification.

Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act may be permitted to directors, officers or controlling persons of our company, pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, we have been advised that, in the opinion of the Securities and Exchange Commission, such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act, and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by us of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of our company in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered hereunder, we will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by us is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

### Recent Sales of Unregistered Securities

On May 8, 2018, we sold to accredited investors 320 units, each consisting of (i) 7,940 shares of the Company's Common Stock, (ii) a U.S.\$5,000 convertible 6% note and (iii) 7,690 warrants, for gross proceeds of U.S.\$3,200,000. Cantone Research, Inc. ("Cantone") and Leede Jones Gable Inc. ("Leede Jones") acted as placement agents. As part of their commission, Cantone and Leede Jones received an aggregate amount of 243,275 warrants.

The Company's issuance of the foregoing securities was made in reliance upon the exemption from registration of the Securities Act provided by Rule 506(d) of Regulation D for sales in the United States and pursuant to Regulation S for sales outside of the United States.

### Item 16. Exhibits and Financial Statement Schedules

The following exhibits are filed as part of this registration statement.

#### EXHIBIT INDEX

| Exhibit No.           | Description  |
|-----------------------|--|
| <a href="#">2.1</a>   | <a href="#">Share exchange agreement dated April 10, 2006 (incorporated by reference to the Form 8-K/A filed on May 5, 2006)</a>   |
| <a href="#">4.1 *</a> | <a href="#">Form of Indenture</a>  |
| <a href="#">5.1*</a>  | <a href="#">Opinion of Dorsey &amp; Whitney LLP</a>  |
| <a href="#">23.1*</a> | <a href="#">Consent of Richter LLP</a>   |
| <a href="#">23.2*</a> | <a href="#">Consent of Dorsey &amp; Whitney LLP (contained in Exhibit 5.1)</a>   |
| 24.1                  | Power of Attorney (included on signature page to the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-3 filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on September 24, 2018 (File No. 333-227498)) |

\* Filed herewith

### Item 17. Undertakings

The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes:

- (1) To file, during any period in which offers or sales are being made, a post-effective amendment to this registration statement:
- (a) To include any prospectus required by Section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act of 1933;

(b) To reflect in the prospectus any facts or events arising after the effective date of the registration statement (or the most recent post-effective amendment thereof) which, individually or in the aggregate, represent a fundamental change in the information set forth in the registration statement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, any increase or decrease in volume of securities offered (if the total dollar value of securities offered would not exceed that which was registered) and any deviation from the low or high end of the estimated maximum offering range may be reflected in the form of prospectus filed with the SEC pursuant to Rule 424(b) if, in aggregate, the changes in volume and price represent no more than a 20 percent change in the maximum aggregate offering price set forth in the "Calculation of Registration Fee" table in the effective registration statement; and (c) To include any material information with respect to the plan of distribution not previously disclosed in the registration statement or any material change to such information in the registration statement.

(2) That, for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each such post-effective amendment shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

(3) To remove from registration by means of a post-effective amendment any of the securities being registered which remain unsold at the termination of the offering.

(4) That, for the purpose of determining liability under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser:

(a) If the Corporation is relying on Rule 430B:

(i) Each prospectus filed by the Corporation pursuant to Rule 424(b)(3) shall be deemed to be part of the registration statement as of the date the filed prospectus was deemed part of and included in the registration statement; and

(ii) Each prospectus required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424(b)(2), (b)(5), or (b)(7) as part of a registration statement in reliance on Rule 430B relating to an offering made pursuant to Rule 415(a)(1)(i), (vii), or (x) for the purpose of providing the information required by section 10(a) of the Securities Act shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the earlier of the date such form of prospectus is first used after effectiveness or the date of the first contract of sale of securities in the offering described in the prospectus. As provided in Rule 430B, for liability purposes of the issuer and any person that is at that date an underwriter, such date shall be deemed to be a new effective date of the registration statement relating to the securities in the registration statement to which that prospectus relates, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof; provided, however, that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such effective date, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such effective date; or

(b) If the Corporation is subject to Rule 430C: Each prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) as part of a registration statement relating to an offering, other than registration statements relying on Rule 430B or other than prospectuses filed in reliance on Rule 430A, shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the date it is first used after effectiveness; provided, however, that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such first use, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such date of first use.

(5) That, for the purpose of determining liability of the registrant under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser in the initial distribution of the securities: The undersigned registrant undertakes that in a primary offering of securities of the undersigned registrant pursuant to this registration statement, regardless of the underwriting method used to sell the securities to the purchaser, if the securities are offered or sold to such purchaser by means of any of the following communications, the undersigned registrant will be a seller to the purchaser and will be considered to offer or sell such securities to such purchaser:

- (i) Any preliminary prospectus or prospectus of the undersigned registrant relating to the offering required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424;
  - (ii) Any free writing prospectus relating to the offering prepared by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant or used or referred to by the undersigned registrant;
  - (iii) The portion of any other free writing prospectus relating to the offering containing material information about the undersigned registrant or its securities provided by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant; and
  - (iv) Any other communication that is an offer in the offering made by the undersigned registrant to the purchaser.
- (6) For purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, the information omitted from the form of prospectus filed as part of this registration statement in reliance upon Rule 430A and contained in a form of prospectus filed by the registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b) (1) or (4) or 497(h) under the Securities Act shall be deemed to be part of this registration statement as of the time it was declared effective.
- (7) Insofar as Indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act of 1933 may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the registrant pursuant to the foregoing provision, or otherwise, the registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the SEC such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question of whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes that, for purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each filing of the registrant's annual report pursuant to section 13(a) or section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (and, where applicable, each filing of an employee benefit plan's annual report pursuant to section 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934) that is incorporated by reference in the registration statement shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

## SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the Registrant has duly caused this Registration Statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the City of Ville St-Laurent, Province of Quebec, on October 4, 2018.

### INTELGENX TECHNOLOGIES CORP.

By: /s/ Horst G. Zerbe

Horst G. Zerbe

Chief Executive Officer and President

(Principal Executive Officer)

By: /s/ Andre Godin

Andre Godin

Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial and

Accounting Officer)

---

**INTELGENX TECHNOLOGIES CORP.**  
**as Issuer**

**and**

[ ]  
**as U.S. Trustee**

**and**

[ ]  
**as Canadian Trustee**

**Indenture**

**Dated as of [ ]**

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

|   |                  |
|---|------------------|
| <b><u>ARTICLE ONE DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION</u></b>                                       | <b><u>1</u></b>  |
| SECTION 1.01 <u>Definitions</u>   | <u>1</u>         |
| SECTION 1.02 <u>Rules of Construction</u>   | <u>10</u>        |
| SECTION 1.03 <u>Compliance Certificates and Opinions</u>  | <u>10</u>        |
| SECTION 1.04 <u>Form of Documents Delivered to Trustees</u>   | <u>11</u>        |
| SECTION 1.05 <u>Acts of Holders</u>   | <u>12</u>        |
| SECTION 1.06 <u>Notices, Etc. to Trustees and Company</u>   | <u>13</u>        |
| SECTION 1.07 <u>Notice to Holders; Waiver</u>   | <u>13</u>        |
| SECTION 1.08 <u>Effect of Headings and Table of Contents</u>  | <u>14</u>        |
| SECTION 1.09 <u>Successors and Assigns</u>  | <u>14</u>        |
| SECTION 1.10 <u>Severability Clause</u>   | <u>14</u>        |
| SECTION 1.11 <u>Benefits of Indenture</u>   | <u>15</u>        |
| SECTION 1.12 <u>Governing Law</u>   | <u>15</u>        |
| SECTION 1.13 <u>Legal Holidays</u>  | <u>15</u>        |
| SECTION 1.14 <u>Agent for Service; Submission to Jurisdiction; Waiver of Immunities</u>                                 | <u>15</u>        |
| SECTION 1.15 <u>Conversion of Judgment Currency</u>   | <u>16</u>        |
| SECTION 1.16 <u>Currency Equivalent</u>   | <u>17</u>        |
| SECTION 1.17 <u>Conflict with Trust Indenture Legislation</u>   | <u>17</u>        |
| SECTION 1.18 <u>Incorporators, Shareholders, Officers and Directors of the Company Exempt from Individual Liability</u> | <u>17</u>        |
| SECTION 1.19 <u>Waiver of Jury Trial</u>  | <u>18</u>        |
| SECTION 1.20 <u>Counterparts</u>  | <u>18</u>        |
| SECTION 1.21 <u>Force Majeure</u>   | <u>18</u>        |
| <b><u>ARTICLE TWO SECURITIES FORMS</u></b>  | <b><u>18</u></b> |
| SECTION 2.01 <u>Forms Generally</u>   | <u>18</u>        |
| SECTION 2.02 <u>Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication</u>   | <u>18</u>        |
| SECTION 2.03 <u>Securities Issuable in Global Form</u>  | <u>19</u>        |
| <b><u>ARTICLE THREE THE SECURITIES</u></b>  | <b><u>20</u></b> |
| SECTION 3.01 <u>Issuable in Series</u>  | <u>20</u>        |
| SECTION 3.02 <u>Denominations</u>   | <u>23</u>        |
| SECTION 3.03 <u>Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating</u>  | <u>24</u>        |
| SECTION 3.04 <u>Temporary Securities</u>  | <u>25</u>        |
| SECTION 3.05 <u>Registration, Registration of Transfer and Exchange</u>   | <u>27</u>        |
| SECTION 3.06 <u>Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities</u>  | <u>31</u>        |
| SECTION 3.07 <u>Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest; Interest Rights Preserved; Optional Interest Reset</u>      | <u>32</u>        |
| SECTION 3.08 <u>Optional Extension of Stated Maturity</u>   | <u>34</u>        |
| SECTION 3.09 <u>Persons Deemed Owners</u>   | <u>35</u>        |
| SECTION 3.10 <u>Cancellation</u>  | <u>36</u>        |
| SECTION 3.11 <u>Computation of Interest</u>   | <u>36</u>        |
| SECTION 3.12 <u>Currency and Manner of Payments in Respect of Securities</u>  | <u>36</u>        |
| SECTION 3.13 <u>Appointment and Resignation of Successor Exchange Rate Agent</u>  | <u>39</u>        |
| <b><u>ARTICLE FOUR SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE</u></b>   | <b><u>40</u></b> |
| SECTION 4.01 <u>Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture</u>   | <u>40</u>        |

|  |                           |
|--|---------------------------|
| <a href="#">SECTION 4.02 Application of Trust Money</a>  | <a href="#">41</a>        |
| <b><a href="#">ARTICLE FIVE REMEDIES</a></b>   | <b><a href="#">41</a></b> |
| <a href="#">SECTION 5.01 Events of Default</a>   | <a href="#">41</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 5.02 Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment</a>                        | <a href="#">42</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 5.03 Collection of Debt and Suits for Enforcement by Trustees</a>                  | <a href="#">43</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 5.04 Trustees May File Proofs of Claim</a>   | <a href="#">44</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 5.05 Trustees May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities</a>              | <a href="#">44</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 5.06 Application of Money Collected</a>  | <a href="#">45</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 5.07 Limitation on Suits</a>   | <a href="#">45</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 5.08 Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest</a> | <a href="#">46</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 5.09 Restoration of Rights and Remedies</a>  | <a href="#">46</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 5.10 Rights and Remedies Cumulative</a>  | <a href="#">46</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 5.11 Delay or Omission Not Waiver</a>  | <a href="#">46</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 5.12 Control by Holders</a>  | <a href="#">46</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 5.13 Waiver of Past Defaults</a>   | <a href="#">47</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 5.14 Waiver of Stay or Extension Laws</a>  | <a href="#">47</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 5.15 Undertaking for Costs</a>   | <a href="#">47</a>        |
| <b><a href="#">ARTICLE SIX THE TRUSTEES</a></b>  | <b><a href="#">48</a></b> |
| <a href="#">SECTION 6.01 Notice of Defaults</a>  | <a href="#">48</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 6.02 Certain Duties and Responsibilities of Trustees</a>                           | <a href="#">48</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 6.03 Certain Rights of Trustees</a>  | <a href="#">49</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 6.04 Trustees Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities</a>           | <a href="#">50</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 6.05 May Hold Securities</a>   | <a href="#">51</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 6.06 Money Held in Trust</a>   | <a href="#">51</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 6.07 Compensation and Reimbursement</a>  | <a href="#">51</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 6.08 Corporate Trustees Required; Eligibility</a>                                  | <a href="#">52</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 6.09 Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor</a>                         | <a href="#">52</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 6.10 Acceptance of Appointment by Successor</a>                                    | <a href="#">54</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 6.11 Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business</a>               | <a href="#">55</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 6.12 Appointment of Authenticating Agent</a>                                       | <a href="#">55</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 6.13 Joint Trustees</a>  | <a href="#">57</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 6.14 Other Rights of Trustees</a>  | <a href="#">57</a>        |
| <b><a href="#">ARTICLE SEVEN HOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY</a></b>                 | <b><a href="#">59</a></b> |
| <a href="#">SECTION 7.01 Company to Furnish Trustees Names and Addresses of Holders</a>                | <a href="#">59</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 7.02 Preservation of List of Names and Addresses of Holders</a>                    | <a href="#">59</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 7.03 Disclosure of Names and Addresses of Holders</a>                              | <a href="#">59</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 7.04 Reports by Trustees</a>   | <a href="#">59</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 7.05 Reports by the Company</a>  | <a href="#">60</a>        |
| <b><a href="#">ARTICLE EIGHT CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE, TRANSFER OR LEASE</a></b>              | <b><a href="#">60</a></b> |
| <a href="#">SECTION 8.01 Company May Consolidate, etc., only on Certain Terms</a>                      | <a href="#">60</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 8.02 Successor Person Substituted</a>  | <a href="#">61</a>        |
| <b><a href="#">ARTICLE NINE SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES</a></b>  | <b><a href="#">61</a></b> |
| <a href="#">SECTION 9.01 Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Holders</a>                        | <a href="#">61</a>        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 9.02 Supplemental Indentures with Consent of Holders</a>                           | <a href="#">63</a>        |

|  |  |           |
|--|--|-----------|
| <a href="#">SECTION 9.03</a>   | <a href="#">Execution of Supplemental Indentures</a>   | 64        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 9.04</a>   | <a href="#">Effect of Supplemental Indentures</a>  | 64        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 9.05</a>   | <a href="#">Conformity with Trust Indenture Legislation</a>  | 64        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 9.06</a>   | <a href="#">Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures</a>   | 64        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 9.07</a>   | <a href="#">Notice of Supplemental Indentures</a>  | 64        |
| <b><a href="#">ARTICLE TEN COVENANTS</a></b>                               |  | <b>65</b> |
| <a href="#">SECTION 10.01</a>  | <a href="#">Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest</a>   | 65        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 10.02</a>  | <a href="#">Maintenance of Office or Agency</a>  | 65        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 10.03</a>  | <a href="#">Money for Securities Payments to Be Held in Trust</a>  | 66        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 10.04</a>  | <a href="#">Statement as to Compliance</a>   | 67        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 10.05</a>  | <a href="#">Payment of Taxes and Other Claims</a>  | 68        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 10.06</a>  | <a href="#">Corporate Existence</a>  | 68        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 10.07</a>  | <a href="#">Waiver of Certain Covenants</a>  | 68        |
| <b><a href="#">ARTICLE ELEVEN REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES</a></b>             |  | <b>68</b> |
| <a href="#">SECTION 11.01</a>  | <a href="#">Applicability of Article</a>   | 68        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 11.02</a>  | <a href="#">Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustees</a>   | 68        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 11.03</a>  | <a href="#">Selection by Trustees of Securities to Be Redeemed</a>   | 69        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 11.04</a>  | <a href="#">Notice of Redemption</a>   | 69        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 11.05</a>  | <a href="#">Deposit of Redemption Price</a>  | 70        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 11.06</a>  | <a href="#">Securities Payable on Redemption Date</a>  | 70        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 11.07</a>  | <a href="#">Securities Redeemed in Part</a>  | 71        |
| <b><a href="#">ARTICLE TWELVE SINKING FUNDS</a></b>                        |  | <b>71</b> |
| <a href="#">SECTION 12.01</a>  | <a href="#">Applicability of Article</a>   | 71        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 12.02</a>  | <a href="#">Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities</a>  | 71        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 12.03</a>  | <a href="#">Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund</a>  | 72        |
| <b><a href="#">ARTICLE THIRTEEN REPAYMENT AT OPTION OF HOLDERS</a></b>     |  | <b>73</b> |
| <a href="#">SECTION 13.01</a>  | <a href="#">Applicability of Article</a>   | 73        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 13.02</a>  | <a href="#">Repayment of Securities</a>  | 73        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 13.03</a>  | <a href="#">Exercise of Option</a>   | 73        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 13.04</a>  | <a href="#">When Securities Presented for Repayment Become Due and Payable</a>                                 | 74        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 13.05</a>  | <a href="#">Securities Repaid in Part</a>  | 74        |
| <b><a href="#">ARTICLE FOURTEEN DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE</a></b> |  | <b>75</b> |
| <a href="#">SECTION 14.01</a>  | <a href="#">Company's Option to Effect Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance</a>                                   | 75        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 14.02</a>  | <a href="#">Defeasance and Discharge</a>   | 75        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 14.03</a>  | <a href="#">Covenant Defeasance</a>  | 75        |
| <a href="#">SECTION 14.04</a>  | <a href="#">Conditions to Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance</a>  | 76        |
| <a href="#">SECTION</a>  | <a href="#">Deposited Money and Government Obligations to Be Held in Trust; Other Miscellaneous Provisions</a> | 77        |

|  |   |                    |
|--|---|--------------------|
| <a href="#">14.05</a>  |   |                    |
| <a href="#">SECTION</a>  | <a href="#">Reinstatement</a>                             | <a href="#">78</a> |
| <a href="#">14.06</a>  |   |                    |
| <b><a href="#">ARTICLE FIFTEEN MEETINGS OF HOLDERS OF SECURITIES</a></b> |   |                    |
| <a href="#">SECTION</a>  | <a href="#">Purposes for Which Meetings May Be Called</a> | <a href="#">79</a> |
| <a href="#">15.01</a>  |   |                    |
| <a href="#">SECTION</a>  | <a href="#">Call, Notice and Place of Meetings</a>        | <a href="#">79</a> |
| <a href="#">15.02</a>  |   |                    |
| <a href="#">SECTION</a>  | <a href="#">Persons Entitled to Vote at Meetings</a>      | <a href="#">79</a> |
| <a href="#">15.03</a>  |   |                    |
| <a href="#">SECTION</a>  | <a href="#">Quorum; Action</a>                            | <a href="#">79</a> |
| <a href="#">15.04</a>  |   |                    |

|  |  |                           |
|--|--|---------------------------|
| <a href="#"><u>SECTION<br/>15.05</u></a> | <a href="#"><u>Determination of Voting Rights; Conduct and Adjournment of Meetings</u></a> | <a href="#"><u>80</u></a> |
| <a href="#"><u>SECTION<br/>15.06</u></a> | <a href="#"><u>Counting Votes and Recording Action of Meetings</u></a>                     | <a href="#"><u>81</u></a> |

CROSS-REFERENCE TABLE

| TIA<br><u>Section</u>  | Indenture<br><u>Section</u> |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 310 (a)                | 6.08(1)                     |
| (b)                    | 6.09                        |
| (c)                    | Not Applicable              |
| 311 (a)                | 6.05                        |
| (b)                    | 6.05                        |
| (c)                    | Not Applicable              |
| 312 (a)                | 7.05                        |
| (b)                    | 7.03                        |
| (c)                    | 7.03                        |
| 313 (a)                | 7.04                        |
| (b)                    | 7.04                        |
| (c)                    | 7.04                        |
| (d)                    | 7.05                        |
| 314 (a)                | 7.05                        |
| (a)(4)                 | 10.04                       |
| (b)                    | Not Applicable              |
| (c)(1)                 | 1.01                        |
| (c)(2)                 | 1.01                        |
| (d)                    | Not Applicable              |
| (e)                    | 1.01                        |
| (f)                    | Not Applicable              |
| 315 (a)                | 6.02                        |
| (b)                    | 6.01                        |
| (c)                    | 6.02                        |
| (d)                    | 6.02                        |
| (e)                    | 5.15                        |
| 316 (a)(last sentence) | 1.02                        |
| (a)(1)(A)              | (“Outstanding”)<br>5.12     |
| (a)(1)(B)              | 5.02, 5.13                  |
| (a)(2)                 | Not Applicable              |
| (b)                    | 5.08                        |
| (c)                    | 1.04(e)                     |
| 317 (a)(1)             | 5.03                        |
| (a)(2)                 | 5.04                        |
| (b)                    | 10.03                       |
| 318 (a)                | 1.16                        |

Note: This Cross-Reference Table shall not, for any purpose, be deemed to be part of this Indenture.

---

INDENTURE, dated as of \_\_\_\_\_, between INTELGENX TECHNOLOGIES CORP., a corporation duly continued and existing under the laws of Delaware (herein called the “ **Company** ”), having its principal office at 6420 Abrams, Ville Saint Laurent, Quebec H4S 1Y2, Canada, and \_\_\_\_\_, a \_\_\_\_\_, organized under the laws of \_\_\_\_\_, as U.S. trustee (herein called the “ **U.S. Trustee** ”), and \_\_\_\_\_, a \_\_\_\_\_, organized under the laws of \_\_\_\_\_, as Canadian trustee (the “ **Canadian Trustee** ” and, together with the U.S. Trustee, the “ **Trustees** ”).

## RECITALS

The Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance from time to time of its debentures, notes, bonds or other evidences of indebtedness (herein called the “ **Securities** ”), which may be convertible into or exchangeable for any securities of any person (including the Company), to be issued in one or more series as in this Indenture provided.

This Indenture is subject to the provisions of Trust Indenture Legislation that are required to be part of this Indenture and shall, to the extent applicable, be governed by such provisions.

All things necessary to make this Indenture a valid agreement of the Company, in accordance with its terms, have been done.

NOW, THEREFORE, THIS INDENTURE WITNESSETH:

For and in consideration of the premises and the purchase of the Securities by the Holders thereof, it is mutually covenanted and agreed, for the equal and proportionate benefit of all Holders of the Securities or of series thereof, as follows:

## ARTICLE ONE DEFINITIONS AND OTHER PROVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION

### SECTION 1.01 Definitions

“ **Act** ,” when used with respect to any Holder, has the meaning specified in Section 1.04.

“ **Affiliate** ” of any specified Person means any other Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with such specified Person. For the purposes of this definition, “control” when used with respect to any specified Person means the power to direct the management and policies of such Person, directly or indirectly, whether through the ownership of voting securities, by contract or otherwise; and the terms “controlling” and “controlled” have meanings correlative to the foregoing.

“ **Authenticating Agent** ” means any Person authorized by the applicable Trustee pursuant to Section 6.12 to act on behalf of such Trustee to authenticate Securities.

“ **Authorized Newspaper** ” means a newspaper, in the English language or in an official language of the country of publication, customarily published on each Business Day, and of general circulation in each place in connection with which the term is used or in the financial community of each such place. Where successive publications are required to be made in Authorized Newspapers, the successive publications may be made in the same or in different newspapers in the same city meeting the foregoing requirements and in each case on any Business Day.

---

“ **Base Currency** ” has the meaning specified in Section 1.14.

“ **Bearer Security** ” means any Security except a Registered Security.

“ **Board of Directors** ” means the board of directors of the Company or any duly authorized committee thereof.

“ **Board Resolution** ” means a copy of a resolution certified by the Corporate Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been duly adopted by the Board of Directors and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification, and delivered to the Trustees.

“ **Branch Register** ” has the meaning specified in Section 3.05.

“ **Branch Security Registrar** ” has the meaning specified in Section 3.05.

“ **Business Day** ,” when used with respect to any Place of Payment or any other particular location referred to in this Indenture or in the Securities, means, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, any day other than Saturday, Sunday or any other day on which commercial banking institutions in that Place of Payment or other location are permitted or required by any applicable law, regulation or executive order to close.

“ **calculation period** ” has the meaning specified in Section 3.11.

“ **Canadian Trustee** ” means the Person named as the “Canadian Trustee” in the first paragraph of this Indenture until a successor Canadian Trustee shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Canadian Trustee” shall mean or include each Person who is then a Canadian Trustee hereunder; *provided, however* , that if at any time there is more than one such Person, “Canadian Trustee” as used with respect to the Securities of any series shall mean only the Canadian Trustee with respect to Securities of that series.

“ **Central Register** ” has the meaning specified in Section 3.05.

“ **Central Security Registrar** ” has the meaning specified in Section 3.05.

“ **Commission** ” means the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission, as from time to time constituted, created under the Exchange Act, or, if at any time after the execution of this Indenture such Commission is not existing and performing the duties now assigned to it under the Trust Indenture Act, then the body performing such duties at such time.

“ **Company** ” means the Person named as the “Company” in the first paragraph of this Indenture until a successor Person shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Company” shall mean such successor Person.

“ **Company Request** ” or “ **Company Order** ” means a written request or order signed in the name of the Company by an Officer and delivered to the Trustees.

“ **Component Currency** ” has the meaning specified in Section 3.12(h) .

“ **Conversion Date** ” has the meaning specified in Section 3.12(d) .

“ **Conversion Event** ” means the cessation of use of (i) a Foreign Currency (other than the Euro or other Currency unit) both by the government of the country which issued such Currency and by a central bank or other public institution of or within the international banking community for the settlement of transactions, (ii) the Euro or (iii) any currency unit (or composite currency) other than the Euro for the purposes for which it was established.

“ **Corporate Trust Office** ” means the principal corporate trust office of the U.S. Trustee or the Canadian Trustee, as applicable, at which at any particular time its corporate trust business may be administered, such an office on the date of execution of this Indenture of the U.S. Trustee is located at \_\_\_\_\_, Attention: \_\_\_\_\_, and of the Canadian Trustee is located at \_\_\_\_\_, Attention: \_\_\_\_\_, except that with respect to presentation of Securities for payment or for registration of transfer or exchange, such term shall mean the office or agency of the U.S. Trustee or the Canadian Trustee, as applicable, designated in writing to the Company at which, at any particular time, its corporate agency business shall be conducted.

“ **coupon** ” means any interest coupon appertaining to a Bearer Security.

“ **covenant defeasance** ” has the meaning specified in Section 14.03.

“ **Currency** ” means any currency or currencies, composite currency or currency unit or currency units, including, without limitation, the Euro, issued by the government of one or more countries or by any recognized confederation or association of such governments.

“ **Default** ” means any event which is, or after notice or passage of time or both would be, an Event of Default.

“ **Defaulted Interest** ” has the meaning specified in Section 3.07.

“ **defeasance** ” has the meaning specified in Section 14.02.

“ **Depository** ” means, with respect to the Securities of any series issuable or issued in the form of one or more Registered Securities, the Person designated as Depository by the Company pursuant to Section 3.05 until a successor Depository shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Depository” shall mean or include each Person who is then a Depository hereunder, and, if at any time there is more than one such Person, “Depository” as used with respect to the Securities of any such series shall mean the Depository with respect to the Registered Securities of that series.

“ **Dollar** ” or “ **\$** ” means a dollar or other equivalent unit in such coin or currency of the United States of America as at the time shall be legal tender for the payment of public and private debts.

“ **Dollar Equivalent of the Currency Unit** ” has the meaning specified in Section 3.12(g) .

“ **Dollar Equivalent of the Foreign Currency** ” has the meaning specified in Section 3.12(f) .

“ **Election Date** ” has the meaning specified in Section 3.12(h) .

“ **Euro** ” means the single currency of the participating member states from time to time of the European Union described in legislation of the European Council for the operation of a single unified European currency (whether known as the Euro or otherwise).

“ **Event of Default** ” has the meaning specified in Section 5.01.

“ **Exchange Act** ” means the United States Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

“ **Exchange Date** ” has the meaning specified in Section 3.04.

“ **Exchange Rate Agent** ” means, with respect to Securities of or within any series, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, a New York clearing house bank, designated pursuant to Section 3.01 or Section 3.13.

“ **Exchange Rate Officer’s Certificate** ” means a tested telex or a certificate setting forth (i) the applicable Market Exchange Rate and (ii) the Dollar or Foreign Currency amounts of principal, premium (if any) and interest (if any) (on an aggregate basis and on the basis of a Security having the lowest denomination principal amount determined in accordance with Section 3.02 in the relevant Currency), payable with respect to a Security of any series on the basis of such Market Exchange Rate, sent (in the case of a telex) or signed (in the case of a certificate) by the Chief Executive Officer, President or Chief Financial Officer of the Company.

“ **Extension Notice** ” has the meaning specified in Section 3.08.

“ **Extension Period** ” has the meaning specified in Section 3.08.

“ **Final Maturity** ” has the meaning specified in Section 3.08.

“ **First Currency** ” has the meaning specified in Section 1.15.

“ **Foreign Currency** ” means any Currency other than Currency of the United States.

“ **GAAP** ” means generally accepted accounting principles in Canada in effect from time to time, unless the Person’s most recent audited or quarterly financial statements are not prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles in Canada, in which case “GAAP” shall mean generally accepted accounting principles in the United States in effect from time to time.

“ **Government Obligations** ” means, unless otherwise specified with respect to any series of Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, securities which are (i) direct obligations of the government which issued the Currency in which the Securities of a particular series are payable or (ii) obligations of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of the government which issued the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable, the payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed by such government, which, in either case, are full faith and credit obligations of such government payable in such Currency and are not callable or redeemable at the option of the issuer thereof and shall also include a depository receipt issued by a bank or trust company as custodian with respect to any such Government Obligation or a specific payment of interest on or principal of any such Government Obligation held by such custodian for the account of the holder of a depository receipt; *provided* that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the holder of such depository receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of the Government Obligation or the specific payment of interest or principal of the Government Obligation evidenced by such depository receipt.

“ **Holder** ” means, in the case of a Registered Security, the Person in whose name a Security is registered in the Security Register and, in the case of a Bearer Security, the bearer thereof and, when used with respect to any coupon, shall mean the bearer thereof.

“ **Indenture** ” means this instrument as originally executed and as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof, and shall include the terms of particular series of Securities established as contemplated by Section 3.01; *provided, however*, that, if at any time more than one Person is acting as Trustee under this instrument, “Indenture” shall mean, with respect to any one or more series of Securities for which such Person is Trustee, this instrument as originally executed or as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into pursuant to the applicable provisions hereof and shall include the terms of the particular series of Securities for which such Person is Trustee established as contemplated by Section 3.01, exclusive, however, of any provisions or terms which relate solely to other series of Securities for which such Person is not Trustee, regardless of when such terms or provisions were adopted, and exclusive of any provisions or terms adopted by means of one or more indentures supplemental hereto executed and delivered after such Person had become such Trustee but to which such Person, as such Trustee, was not a party.

“ **Indexed Security** ” means a Security the terms of which provide that the principal amount thereof payable at Stated Maturity may be more or less than the principal face amount thereof at original issuance.

“ **interest** ,” when used with respect to an Original Issue Discount Security which by its terms bears interest only after Maturity, means interest payable after Maturity at the rate prescribed in such Original Issue Discount Security.

“ **Interest Payment Date** ,” when used with respect to any Security, means the Stated Maturity of an installment of interest on such Security.

“ **Judgment Currency** ” has the meaning specified in Section 1.14.

“ **Lien** ” means any mortgage, pledge, hypothecation, charge, assignment, deposit arrangement, encumbrance, security interest, lien (statutory or other), or preference, priority or other security or similar agreement or preferential arrangement of any kind or nature whatsoever (including, without limitation, any agreement to give or grant a Lien or any lease, conditional sale or other title retention agreement having substantially the same economic effect as any of the foregoing).

“ **mandatory sinking fund payment** ” has the meaning specified in Section 12.01.

“ **Market Exchange Rate** ” means, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, (i) for any conversion involving a Currency unit on the one hand and Dollars or any Foreign Currency on the other, the exchange rate between the relevant Currency unit and Dollars or such Foreign Currency calculated by the method specified pursuant to Section 3.01 for the Securities of the relevant series, (ii) for any conversion of Dollars into any Foreign Currency, the noon (New York City time) buying rate for such Foreign Currency for cable transfers quoted in New York City as certified for customs purposes by the Federal Reserve Bank of New York and (iii) for any conversion of one Foreign Currency into Dollars or another Foreign Currency, the spot rate at noon local time in the relevant market at which, in accordance with normal banking procedures, the Dollars or Foreign Currency into which conversion is being made could be purchased with the Foreign Currency from which conversion is being made from major banks located in New York City, Toronto, London or any other principal market for Dollars or such purchased Foreign Currency, in each case determined by the Exchange Rate Agent. Unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, in the event of the unavailability of any of the exchange rates provided for in the foregoing clauses (i), (ii) and (iii), the Exchange Rate Agent shall use, in its sole discretion and without liability on its part, such quotation of the Federal Reserve Bank of New York as of the most recent available date, or quotations from one or more major banks in New York City, Toronto, London or another principal market for the Currency in question, or such other quotations as the Exchange Rate Agent shall deem appropriate. Unless otherwise specified by the Exchange Rate Agent, if there is more than one market for dealing in any Currency by reason of foreign exchange regulations or otherwise, the market to be used in respect of such Currency shall be that upon which a non-resident issuer of securities designated in such Currency would purchase such Currency in order to make payments in respect of such securities.

“**Maturity**,” when used with respect to any Security, means the date on which the principal of such Security or an installment of principal becomes due and payable as therein or herein provided, whether at the Stated Maturity or by declaration of acceleration, notice of redemption, notice of option to elect repayment or otherwise.

“**Notice of Default**” has the meaning specified in Section 6.01.

“**Officer**” means the Chair of the Board of Directors, the Chief Executive Officer, the President, the Chief Financial Officer, the Chief Operating Officer, any Executive Vice President, any Vice President, the Treasurer or the Corporate Secretary of the Company or, in the event that the Company is a partnership or a limited liability company that has no such officers, a person duly authorized under applicable law by the general partner, managers, members or a similar body to act on behalf of the Company.

“**Officer’s Certificate**” means a certificate, which shall comply with this Indenture, signed by an Officer and delivered to the Trustees.

“**Opinion of Counsel**” means a written opinion of counsel, who may be counsel for the Company, including an employee of the Company, who shall be acceptable to the Trustees, which opinion may contain customary exceptions and qualifications as to the matters set forth therein.

“**Optional Reset Date**” has the meaning specified in Section 3.07.

“**optional sinking fund payment**” has the meaning specified in Section 12.01.

“**Original Issue Discount Security**” means any Security which provides for an amount less than the principal amount thereof to be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 5.02.

“**Original Stated Maturity**” has the meaning specified in Section 3.08.

“**Other Currency**” has the meaning specified in Section 1.15.

“**Outstanding**,” when used with respect to Securities, means, as of the date of determination, all Securities theretofore authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, except:

- (i) Securities theretofore cancelled by either Trustee or delivered to either Trustee for cancellation;
- (ii) Securities, or portions thereof, for whose payment or redemption or repayment at the option of the Holder, money in the necessary amount has been theretofore deposited with either Trustee or any Paying Agent (other than the Company) in trust or set aside and segregated in trust by the Company (if the Company shall act as its own Paying Agent) for the Holders of such Securities and any coupons appertaining thereto; *provided* that, if such Securities are to be redeemed, notice of such redemption has been duly given pursuant to this Indenture or provision therefor satisfactory to the Trustees has been made;

- (iii) Securities, except to the extent provided in Section 14.02 and Section 14.03, with respect to which the Company has effected defeasance and/or covenant defeasance as provided in Article Fourteen; and
- (iv) Securities which have been paid pursuant to Section 3.06 or in exchange for or in lieu of which other Securities have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to this Indenture, other than any such Securities in respect of which there shall have been presented to the Trustees proof satisfactory to them that such Securities are held by a protected purchaser (as defined in Article 8 of the UCC) in whose hands such Securities are valid obligations of the Company;

*provided, however*, that in determining whether the Holders of the requisite principal amount of the Outstanding Securities have given any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver hereunder or are present at a meeting of Holders for quorum purposes, and for the purpose of making the calculations required by TIA Section 313, (i) the principal amount of an Original Issue Discount Security that may be counted in making such determination or calculation and that shall be deemed to be Outstanding for such purpose shall be equal to the amount of principal thereof that would be (or shall have been declared to be) due and payable, at the time of such determination, upon a declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 5.02, (ii) the principal amount of any Security denominated in a Foreign Currency that may be counted in making such determination or calculation and that shall be deemed Outstanding for such purpose shall be equal to the Dollar equivalent, determined as of the date such Security is originally issued by the Company as set forth in an Exchange Rate Officer's Certificate delivered to the Trustees, of the principal amount (or, in the case of an Original Issue Discount Security, the Dollar equivalent as of such date of original issuance of the amount determined as provided in clause (i) above) of such Security, (iii) the principal amount of any Indexed Security that may be counted in making such determination or calculation and that shall be deemed outstanding for such purpose shall be equal to the principal face amount of such Indexed Security at original issuance, unless otherwise provided with respect to such Security pursuant to Section 3.01, and (iv) Securities owned by the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or of such other obligor shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding, except that, in determining whether the Trustees shall be protected in making such calculation or in relying upon any such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver, only Securities which the Trustees know to be so owned shall be so disregarded. Securities so owned which have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding if the pledgee establishes to the satisfaction of the Trustees the pledgee's right so to act with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or any Affiliate of the Company or such other obligor.

“ **Paying Agent** ” means any Person (including the Company acting as Paying Agent) authorized by the Company to pay the principal of, premium (if any) or interest (if any) on any Securities on behalf of the Company. Such Person must be capable of making payment in the Currency of the issued Security.

“ **Person** ” means any individual, corporation, body corporate, partnership, limited partnership, limited liability partnership, joint venture, limited liability company, unlimited liability company, association, joint-stock company, trust, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof.

“ **Place of Payment** ” means, when used with respect to the Securities of or within any series, each place where the principal of, premium (if any) and interest (if any) on such Securities are payable as specified as contemplated by Sections 3.01 and 10.02.

“ **Predecessor Security** ” of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same debt as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any security authenticated and delivered under Section 3.06 in exchange for or in lieu of a mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security or a Security to which a mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen coupon appertains shall be deemed to evidence the same debt as the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security or the Security to which the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen coupon appertains, as the case may be.

“ **Privacy Laws** ” has the meaning specified in Section 6.14.

“ **rate(s) of exchange** ” has the meaning specified in Section 1.14.

“ **Redemption Date** ,” when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, in whole or in part, means the date fixed for such redemption by or pursuant to this Indenture.

“ **Redemption Price** ,” when used with respect to any Security to be redeemed, in whole or in part, means the price at which it is to be redeemed pursuant to this Indenture, plus accrued and unpaid interest thereon to the Redemption Date.

“ **Registered Security** ” means any Security registered in the Security Register.

“ **Regular Record Date** ” for the interest payable on any Interest Payment Date on the Registered Securities of or within any series means the date specified for that purpose as contemplated by Section 3.01.

“ **Repayment Date** ” means, when used with respect to any Security to be repaid at the option of the Holder, the date fixed for such repayment pursuant to this Indenture.

“ **Reset Notice** ” has the meaning specified in Section 3.07.

“ **Responsible Officer** ,” when used with respect to a Trustee, means any vice president, secretary, any assistant secretary, treasurer, any assistant treasurer, any senior trust officer, any trust officer, the controller within the corporate trust administration division of a Trustee or any other officer of a Trustee customarily performing functions similar to those performed by any of the above-designated officers, and also means, with respect to a particular corporate trust matter, any other officer to whom such matter is referred because of his knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject.

“ **Securities** ” has the meaning stated in the first recital of this Indenture and more particularly means any Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture; *provided, however*, that if at any time there is more than one Person acting as Trustee under this Indenture, “Securities” with respect to the Indenture as to which such Person is Trustee shall have the meaning stated in the first recital of this Indenture and shall more particularly mean Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture, exclusive, however, of Securities of any series as to which such Person is not Trustee.

“ **Security Register** ” and “ **Security Registrar** ” have the respective meanings specified in Section 3.05.

“ **Special Record Date** ” for the payment of any Defaulted Interest on the Registered Securities of or within any series means a date fixed by the Trustees pursuant to Section 3.07.

“ **Specified Amount** ” has the meaning specified in Section 3.12(h) .

“ **Stated Maturity** ,” when used with respect to any Security or any installment of principal thereof or interest thereon, means the date specified in such Security or a coupon representing such installment of interest as the fixed date on which the principal of such Security or such installment of principal or interest is due and payable, as such date may be extended pursuant to the provisions of Section 3.08 (if applicable).

“ **Subsequent Interest Period** ” has the meaning specified in Section 3.07.

“ **Trust Indenture Act** ” or “ **TIA** ” means the United States Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, as in force at the date as of which this Indenture was executed, except as provided in Section 9.05.

“ **Trust Indenture Legislation** ” means, at any time, the provisions of (i) any applicable statute of Canada or any province or territory thereof and the regulations thereunder as amended or re-enacted from time to time, but only to the extent applicable, or (iii) the Trust Indenture Act and regulations thereunder, in each case, relating to trust indentures and to the rights, duties and obligations of trustees under trust indentures and of corporations issuing debt obligations under trust indentures, to the extent that such provisions are at such time in force and applicable to this Indenture or the Company or the Trustees.

“ **Trustee** ” or “ **Trustees** ” means the U.S. Trustee and the Canadian Trustee. If a Canadian Trustee is not appointed under this Indenture, or resigns or is removed and, pursuant to Section 6.09, the Company is not required to appoint a successor Trustee to the Canadian Trustee, “Trustee,” “Trustees” and any reference to “either Trustee,” “both of the Trustees” or such similar references shall mean the Person named as the U.S. Trustee or any successor thereto appointed pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture. Except to the extent otherwise indicated, “Trustees” shall refer to the Canadian Trustee (if appointed and still serving) and the U.S. Trustee, both jointly and individually.

“ **UCC** ” means the New York uniform commercial code in effect from time to time.

“ **U.S. Federal Bankruptcy Code** ” means the Bankruptcy Act of Title 11 of the United States Code, as amended from time to time.

“ **U.S. Trustee** ” means the Person named as the “U.S. Trustee” in the first paragraph of this Indenture until a successor U.S. Trustee shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “U.S. Trustee” shall mean or include each Person who is then a U.S. Trustee hereunder; *provided, however*, that if at any time there is more than one such Person, “U.S. Trustee” as used with respect to the Securities of any series shall mean only the U.S. Trustee with respect to Securities of that series.

“ **United States** ” means, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, the United States of America (including the states and the District of Columbia), its territories, its possessions and other areas subject to its jurisdiction.

“ **United States person** ” means, unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, an individual who is a citizen or resident of the United States, a corporation, partnership (including any entity treated as a corporation or as a partnership for United States federal income tax purposes) or other entity created or organized in or under the laws of the United States, any state thereof or the District of Columbia, an estate the income of which is subject to United States federal income taxation regardless of its source, or a trust if (A) it is subject to the primary supervision of a court within the United States and one or more United States persons have the authority to control all substantial decisions of the trust or (B) it has a valid election in effect under applicable United States Treasury Regulations to be treated as a United States person.

“ **Valuation Date** ” has the meaning specified in Section 3.12(c) .

“ **Writing** ” has the meaning specified in Section 6.13.

“ **Yield to Maturity** ” means the yield to maturity, computed at the time of issuance of a Security (or, if applicable, at the most recent redetermination of interest on such Security) and as set forth in such Security in accordance with generally accepted United States bond yield computation principles.

#### **SECTION 1.02 Rules of Construction .**

For all purposes of this Indenture, except as otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires:

- (1) the terms defined in this Indenture have the meanings assigned to them herein and include the plural as well as the singular;
- (2) all terms used herein which are defined in the Trust Indenture Act, either directly or by reference therein, have the meanings assigned to them therein, and the terms “cash transaction” and “self-liquidating paper,” as used in TIA Section 319, shall have the meanings assigned to them in the rules of the Commission adopted under the Trust Indenture Act;
- (3) the words “herein,” “hereof” and “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision;
- (4) “or” is not exclusive;
- (5) words implying any gender shall apply to all genders;
- (6) the words Subsection, Section and Article refer to the Subsections, Sections and Articles, respectively, of this Indenture unless otherwise noted; and
- (7) “include,” “includes” or “including” means include, includes or including, in each case, without limitation.

#### **SECTION 1.03 Compliance Certificates and Opinions .**

Upon any application or request by the Company to the Trustees to take any action under any provision of this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustees an Officer’s Certificate stating that all conditions precedent, if any, provided for in this Indenture (including any covenant compliance with which constitutes a condition precedent) relating to the proposed action have been complied with and an Opinion of Counsel stating that in the opinion of such counsel all such conditions precedent, if any, have been complied with, except that in the case of any such application or request as to which the furnishing of such documents is specifically required by any provision of this Indenture relating to such particular application or request, no additional certificate or opinion need be furnished.

Every certificate or opinion with respect to compliance with a covenant or condition provided for in this Indenture (other than pursuant to Section 10.04) shall include:

- (1) a statement that each individual signing such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition and the definitions herein relating thereto;
- (2) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based;
- (3) a statement that, in the opinion of each such individual, he has made such examination or investigation as is necessary to enable him to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with; and
- (4) a statement as to whether, in the opinion of each such individual, such covenant or condition has been complied with.

**SECTION 1.04 Form of Documents Delivered to Trustees .**

In any case where several matters are required to be certified by, or covered by an opinion of, any specified Person, it is not necessary that all such matters be certified by, or covered by the opinion of, only one such Person, or that they be so certified or covered by only one document, but one such Person may certify or give an opinion with respect to some matters and one or more other such Persons may certify or give an opinion with respect to other matters, and any such Person may certify or give an opinion as to such matters in one or several documents.

Any certificate or opinion of an officer of the Company may be based, insofar as it relates to legal matters, upon an Opinion of Counsel, a certificate of, or representations by, counsel, unless such officer knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to the matters upon which his certificate or opinion is based are erroneous. Any such certificate or Opinion of Counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to factual matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, an officer or officers of the Company stating that the information with respect to such factual matters is in the possession of the Company, unless such counsel knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to such matters are erroneous.

Any certificate or opinion of an officer of the Company or counsel may be based, insofar as it relates to accounting matters, upon a certificate or opinion of, or representations by, an accountant or firm of accountants in the employ of the Company, unless such officer or counsel, as the case may be, knows, or in the exercise of reasonable care should know, that the certificate or opinion or representations with respect to the accounting matters upon which such certificate or opinion may be based are erroneous. Any certificate or opinion of any independent firm of public accountants filed with the Trustees shall contain a statement that such firm is independent.

Where any Person is required to make, give or execute two or more applications, requests, consents, certificates, statements, opinions or other instruments under this Indenture, they may, but need not, be consolidated and form one instrument.

## SECTION 1.05 Acts of Holders .

(a) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by this Indenture to be given or taken by Holders of the Outstanding Securities of all series or one or more series, as the case may be, may be embodied in and evidenced by one or more instruments of substantially similar tenor signed by such Holders in person or by agents duly appointed in writing. If Securities of a series are issuable as Bearer Securities, any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by this Indenture to be given or taken by Holders of such series may, alternatively, be embodied in and evidenced by the record of Holders of Securities of such series voting in favor thereof, either in person or by proxies duly appointed in writing, at any meeting of Holders of Securities of such series duly called and held in accordance with the provisions of Article Fifteen, or a combination of such instruments and any such record. Except as herein otherwise expressly provided, such action shall become effective when such instrument or instruments or record or both are delivered to the Trustees and, where it is hereby expressly required, to the Company. Such instrument or instruments and any such record (and the action embodied therein and evidenced thereby) are herein sometimes referred to as the “ **Act** ” of the Holders signing such instrument or instruments or so voting at any such meeting. Proof of execution of any such instrument or of a writing appointing any such agent, or of the holding by any Person of a Security, shall be sufficient for any purpose of this Indenture and conclusive in favor of the Trustees and the Company, if made in the manner provided in this Section 1.05. The record of any meeting of Holders of Securities shall be proved in the manner provided in Section 15.06.

(b) The fact and date of the execution by any Person of any such instrument or writing may be proved by the affidavit of a witness of such execution or by a certificate of a notary public or other officer authorized by law to take acknowledgments of deeds, certifying that the individual signing such instrument or writing acknowledged to him the execution thereof. Where such execution is by a signer acting in a capacity other than his individual capacity, such certificate or affidavit shall also constitute sufficient proof of authority. The fact and date of the execution of any such instrument or writing, or the authority of the Person executing the same, may also be proved in any other manner which the Trustees deem sufficient.

(c) The principal amount and serial numbers of Registered Securities held by any Person, and the date of holding the same, shall be proved by the Security Register.

(d) The principal amount and serial numbers of Bearer Securities held by any Person, and the date of holding the same, may be proved by the production of such Bearer Securities or by a certificate executed, as depository, by any trust company, bank, banker or other depository, wherever situated, if such certificate shall be deemed by the Trustees to be satisfactory, showing that at the date therein mentioned such Person had on deposit with such depository, or exhibited to it, the Bearer Securities therein described; or such facts may be proved by the certificate or affidavit of the Person holding such Bearer Securities, if such certificate or affidavit is deemed by the Trustees to be satisfactory. The Trustees and the Company may assume that such ownership of any Bearer Security continues until (1) another certificate or affidavit bearing a later date issued in respect of the same Bearer Security is produced, or (2) such Bearer Security is produced to the Trustees by some other Person, or (3) such Bearer Security is surrendered in exchange for a Registered Security, or (4) such Bearer Security is no longer Outstanding. The principal amount and serial numbers of Bearer Securities held by any Person, and the date of holding the same, may also be proved in any other manner that the Trustees deem sufficient.

(e) If the Company shall solicit from the Holders of Registered Securities any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act, the Company may, at its option, by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, fix in advance a record date for the determination of Holders entitled to give such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act, but the Company shall have no obligation to do so. Notwithstanding Trust Indenture Legislation, including TIA Section 316(c), such record date shall be the record date specified in or pursuant to such Board Resolution, which shall be a date not earlier than the date 30 days prior to the first solicitation of Holders generally in connection therewith and not later than the date such solicitation is completed. If such a record date is fixed, such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act may be given before or after such record date, but only the Holders of record at the close of business on such record date shall be deemed to be Holders for the purposes of determining whether Holders of the requisite proportion of Outstanding Securities have authorized or agreed or consented to such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act, and for that purpose the Outstanding Securities shall be computed as of such record date; *provided* that no such authorization, agreement or consent by the Holders on such record date shall be deemed effective unless it shall become effective pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture not later than eleven months after the record date.

(f) Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other Act of the Holder of any Security shall bind every future Holder of the same Security and the Holder of every Security issued upon the registration of transfer thereof or in exchange therefor or in lieu thereof in respect of anything done, omitted or suffered to be done by the Trustees or the Company in reliance thereon, whether or not notation of such action is made upon such Security.

**SECTION 1.06 Notices, Etc. to Trustees and Company .**

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or Act of Holders or other documents provided or permitted by this Indenture to be made upon, given or furnished to, or filed with:

- (1) the U.S. Trustee, by the Canadian Trustee, any Holder or by the Company shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder if made, given, furnished or filed in writing to or with the U.S. Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office, Attention: \_\_\_\_\_, or
- (2) the Canadian Trustee, by the U.S. Trustee, any Holder or by the Company shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder if made, given, furnished or filed in writing to or with the Canadian Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office, Attention: \_\_\_\_\_, or
- (3) the Company by either Trustee or any Holder shall be sufficient for every purpose hereunder (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, first- class postage prepaid, to the Company at 6420 Abrams, Ville Saint Laurent, Quebec H4S 1Y2, Canada, Attention: Corporate Secretary or such other address and/or officer as the Company may designate on written notice to the Trustees.

**SECTION 1.07 Notice to Holders; Waiver .**

Where this Indenture provides for notice of any event to Holders of Registered Securities by the Company or the Trustees, such notice shall be sufficiently given (unless otherwise herein expressly provided) if in writing and mailed, first-class postage prepaid, to each such Holder affected by such event, at his address as it appears in the Security Register, not later than the latest date, and not earlier than the earliest date, prescribed for the giving of such notice. In any case where notice to Holders of Registered Securities is given by mail, neither the failure to mail such notice, nor any defect in any notice so mailed, to any particular Holder shall affect the sufficiency of such notice with respect to other Holders of Registered Securities or the sufficiency of any notice to Holders of Bearer Securities given as provided.

Any notice mailed to a Holder in the manner herein prescribed shall be conclusively deemed to have been received by such Holder, whether or not such Holder actually receives such notice.

In case, by reason of the suspension of or irregularities in regular mail service or by reason of any other cause, it shall be impractical to mail notice of any event to Holders of Registered Securities when such notice is required to be given pursuant to any provision of this Indenture, then any manner of giving such notice as shall be satisfactory to the Trustees shall be deemed to be sufficient giving of such notice for every purpose hereunder.

Except as otherwise expressly provided herein or otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, where this Indenture provides for notice to Holders of Bearer Securities of any event, such notice shall be sufficiently given to Holders of Bearer Securities if published in an Authorized Newspaper in The City of New York and in such other city or cities as may be specified in such Securities on a Business Day at least twice, the first such publication to be not earlier than the earliest date, and not later than the latest date, prescribed for the giving of such notice. Any such notice shall be deemed to have been given on the date of the first such publication.

In case, by reason of the suspension of publication of any Authorized Newspaper or Authorized Newspapers or by reason of any other cause, it shall be impracticable to publish any notice to Holders of Bearer Securities as provided above, then such notification to Holders of Bearer Securities as shall be satisfactory to the Trustees shall be deemed to be sufficient giving of such notice for every purpose hereunder. Neither the failure to give notice by publication to Holders of Bearer Securities as provided above, nor any defect in any notice so published, shall affect the sufficiency of such notice with respect to other Holders of Bearer Securities or the sufficiency of any notice to Holders of Registered Securities given as provided herein.

Any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent or waiver required or permitted under this Indenture shall be in the English language, except that any published notice may be in an official language of the country of publication.

Where this Indenture provides for notice in any manner, such notice may be waived in writing by the Person entitled to receive such notice, either before or after the event, and such waiver shall be the equivalent of such notice. Waivers of notice by Holders shall be filed with the Trustees, but such filing shall not be a condition precedent to the validity of any action taken in reliance upon such waiver.

#### **SECTION 1.08 Effect of Headings and Table of Contents .**

The Article and Section headings herein and the Table of Contents are for convenience only and shall not affect the construction hereof.

#### **SECTION 1.09 Successors and Assigns .**

All covenants and agreements in this Indenture by the Company and the Trustees shall bind their successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

#### **SECTION 1.10 Severability Clause .**

In case any provision in this Indenture or in any Security or coupon shall be invalid, illegal or unenforceable, the validity, legality and enforceability of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected or impaired thereby.

**SECTION 1.11 Benefits of Indenture .**

Nothing in this Indenture or in the Securities or coupons, express or implied, shall give to any Person, other than the parties hereto, any Authenticating Agent, any Paying Agent, any Securities Registrar and their successors hereunder and the Holders of Securities or coupons, any benefit or any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under this Indenture. Subject to Section 1.16, at all times in relation to this Indenture and any action to be taken hereunder, the Company and the Trustees each shall observe and comply with Trust Indenture Legislation and the Company, the Trustees and each Holder of a Security shall be entitled to the benefits of Trust Indenture Legislation.

**SECTION 1.12 Governing Law .**

This Indenture and the Securities and coupons shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the law of the State of New York, but without giving effect to applicable principles of conflicts of law to the extent that the application of the law of another jurisdiction would be required thereby. Each Trustee and the Company agrees to comply with all provisions of Trust Indenture Legislation applicable to or binding upon it in connection with this Indenture and any action to be taken hereunder. This Indenture is subject to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act that are required to be part of this Indenture and shall, to the extent applicable, be governed by such provisions. Notwithstanding the preceding sentence, the exercise, performance or discharge by the Canadian Trustee of any of its rights, powers, duties or responsibilities hereunder shall be construed in accordance with the laws of the Province of Ontario and the federal laws of Canada applicable thereto.

**SECTION 1.13 Legal Holidays .**

In any case where any Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date, sinking fund payment date or Stated Maturity or Maturity of any Security shall not be a Business Day at any Place of Payment or other location contemplated hereunder, then (notwithstanding any other provision of this Indenture or of any Security or coupon other than a provision in the Securities of any series which specifically states that such provision shall apply in lieu of this Section 1.13), payment of principal, premium (if any) or interest (if any), need not be made at such Place of Payment or other location contemplated hereunder on such date, but may be made on the next succeeding Business Day at such Place of Payment or other location contemplated hereunder with the same force and effect as if made on the Interest Payment Date or Redemption Date or sinking fund payment date, or at the Stated Maturity or Maturity; *provided* that no interest shall accrue for the period from and after such Interest Payment Date, Redemption Date, sinking fund payment date, Stated Maturity or Maturity, as the case may be.

**SECTION 1.14 Agent for Service; Submission to Jurisdiction; Waiver of Immunities .**

By the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company (i) acknowledges that it has irrevocably designated and appointed \_\_\_\_\_ as its authorized agent upon which process may be served in any suit, action or proceeding arising out of or relating to the Securities or this Indenture that may be instituted in any United States federal or New York state court located in The Borough of Manhattan, The City of New York, or brought by the Trustees (whether in their individual capacity or in their capacity as Trustees hereunder), (ii) irrevocably submits to the non-exclusive jurisdiction of any such court in any such suit or proceeding, and (iii) agrees that service of process upon \_\_\_\_\_ and written notice of said service to the Company (mailed or delivered to the Company at 6420 Abrams, Ville Saint Laurent, Quebec H4S 1Y2, Canada, Attention: Corporate Secretary or such other address and/or officer as the Company may designate on written notice to the Trustees), shall be deemed in every respect effective service of process upon the Company in any such suit or proceeding. The Company further agrees to take any and all action, including the execution and filing of any and all such documents and instruments, as may be necessary to continue such designation and appointment of \_\_\_\_\_ in full force and effect so long as this Indenture shall be in full force and effect.

To the extent that the Company has or hereafter may acquire any immunity from jurisdiction of any court or from any legal process (whether through service of notice, attachment prior to judgment, attachment in aid of execution, execution or otherwise) with respect to itself or its property, the Company hereby irrevocably waives such immunity in respect of its obligations under this Indenture and the Securities, to the extent permitted by law.

The Company irrevocably and unconditionally waives, to the fullest extent permitted by law, any objection that it may now or hereafter have to the laying of venue of any such action, suit or proceeding in any such court or any appellate court with respect thereto. The Company irrevocably waives, to the fullest extent permitted by law, the defense of an inconvenient forum to the maintenance of any such action, suit or proceeding in any such court.

#### **SECTION 1.15 Conversion of Judgment Currency .**

(a) The Company covenants and agrees that the following provisions shall apply to conversion of Currency in the case of the Securities and this Indenture, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law:

(i) If for the purposes of obtaining judgment in, or enforcing the judgment of, any court in any country, it becomes necessary to convert into a Currency (the “**Judgment Currency**”) an amount due or contingently due in any other Currency under the Securities of any series and this Indenture (the “**Base Currency**”), then the conversion shall be made at the rate of exchange prevailing on the Business Day before the day on which the final judgment is given or the order of enforcement is made, as the case may be (unless a court shall otherwise determine).

(ii) If there is a change in the rate of exchange prevailing between the Business Day before the day on which the judgment referred to in (i) above is given or an order of enforcement is made, as the case may be (or such other date as a court shall determine), and the date of receipt of the amount due, the Company shall pay such additional (or, as the case may be, such lesser) amount, if any, as may be necessary so that the amount paid in the Judgment Currency when converted at the rate of exchange prevailing on the date of receipt will produce the amount in the Base Currency originally due.

(b) In the event of the winding-up of the Company at any time while any amount or damages owing under the Securities and this Indenture, or any judgment or order rendered in respect thereof, shall remain outstanding, the Company shall indemnify and hold the Holders and the Trustees harmless against any deficiency arising or resulting from any variation in rates of exchange between (1) the date as of which the equivalent of the amount in the Base Currency due or contingently due under the Securities and this Indenture (other than under this Subsection (b)) is calculated for the purposes of such winding-up and (2) the final date for the filing of proofs of claim in such winding-up. For the purpose of this Subsection (b) the final date for the filing of proofs of claim in the winding-up of the Company shall be the date fixed by the liquidator or otherwise in accordance with the relevant provisions of applicable law as being the latest practicable date as at which liabilities of the Company may be ascertained for such winding-up prior to payment by the liquidator or otherwise in respect thereto.

(c) The obligations contained in Subsections (a)(ii) and (b) of this Section 1.15 shall constitute separate and independent obligations of the Company from its other obligations under the Securities and this Indenture, shall give rise to separate and independent causes of action against the Company, shall apply irrespective of any waiver or extension granted by any Holder or the Trustees from time to time and shall continue in full force and effect notwithstanding any judgment or order or the filing of any proof of claim in the winding up of the Company for a liquidated sum in respect of amounts due hereunder (other than under Subsection (b) above) or under any such judgment or order. Any such deficiency as aforesaid shall be deemed to constitute a loss suffered by the Holders or the Trustees, as the case may be, and no proof or evidence of any actual loss shall be required by the Company or its liquidator. In the case of Subsection (b) above, the amount of such deficiency shall not be deemed to be increased or reduced by any variation in rates of exchange occurring between the said final date and the date of any liquidating distribution.

The term “ **rate(s) of exchange** ” shall mean the rate of exchange quoted by a Canadian chartered bank as may be designated in writing by the Company to the Trustees from time to time, at its central foreign exchange desk in its main office in Toronto at 12:00 noon (Toronto time) on the relevant date for purchases of the Base Currency with the Judgment Currency and includes any premiums and costs of exchange payable. The Trustees shall have no duty or liability with respect to monitoring or enforcing this Section 1.15.

**SECTION 1.16 Currency Equivalent .**

Except as otherwise provided in this Indenture, for purposes of the construction of the terms of this Indenture or of the Securities, in the event that any amount is stated herein in the Currency of one nation (the “ **First Currency** ”), as of any date such amount shall also be deemed to represent the amount in the Currency of any other relevant nation (the “ **Other Currency** ”) which is required to purchase such amount in the First Currency at the Bank of Canada noon rate as reported by Telerate on screen 3194 (or such other means of reporting the Bank of Canada noon rate as may be agreed upon by each of the parties to this Indenture) on the date of determination.

**SECTION 1.17 Conflict with Trust Indenture Legislation .**

If and to the extent that any provision of this Indenture limits, qualifies or conflicts with any mandatory requirement of Trust Indenture Legislation, such mandatory requirement shall control. If and to the extent that any provision hereof modifies or excludes any provision of Trust Indenture Legislation that may be so modified or excluded, the latter provision shall be deemed to apply hereof as so modified or to be excluded, as the case may be.

**SECTION 1.18 Incorporators, Shareholders, Officers and Directors of the Company Exempt from Individual Liability .**

No recourse under or upon any obligation, covenant or agreement contained in this Indenture, or in any Security, or because of any indebtedness evidenced thereby, shall be had against any incorporator, as such, or against any past, present or future shareholder, officer or director, as such, of the Company or of any successor, either directly or through the Company or any successor, under any rule of law, statute or constitutional provision or by the enforcement of any assessment or by any legal or equitable proceeding or otherwise, all such liability being expressly waived and released by the acceptance of the Securities by the Holders and as part of the consideration for the issue of the Securities.

**SECTION 1.19 Waiver of Jury Trial .**

Each of the Company and the Trustees hereby irrevocably waives, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law, any and all right to trial by jury in any legal proceeding arising out of or relating to this Indenture, the Securities or the transactions contemplated hereby.

**SECTION 1.20 Counterparts .**

This Indenture may be executed in any number of counterparts (either by facsimile or by original manual signature), each of which so executed shall be deemed to be an original, but all such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same Indenture.

**SECTION 1.21 Force Majeure .**

Except for the payment obligations of the Company contained herein, neither the Company nor the Trustees shall be liable to each other, or held in breach of this Indenture, if prevented, hindered, or delayed in the performance or observance of any provision contained herein by reason of act of God, riots, terrorism, acts of war, epidemics, governmental action or judicial order, earthquakes, or any other similar causes (including, but not limited to, mechanical, electronic or communication interruptions, disruptions or failures). Performance times under this Indenture shall be extended for a period of time equivalent to the time lost because of any delay that is excusable under this Section 1.21.

**ARTICLE TWO  
SECURITIES FORMS**

**SECTION 2.01 Forms Generally .**

The Registered Securities, if any, of each series and the Bearer Securities, if any, of each series and related coupons, if any, shall be in substantially the forms as shall be established by or pursuant to a Board Resolution or in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in each case with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as are required or permitted by this Indenture, and may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification and such legends or endorsements placed thereon as may be required to comply with the rules of any securities exchange or as may, consistently herewith, be determined by the Officer executing such Securities or coupons, as evidenced by the execution of such Securities or coupons by such Officer. If the forms of Securities or coupons of any series are established by action taken pursuant to a Board Resolution, a copy of an appropriate record of such action shall be certified by the Corporate Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustees at or prior to the delivery of the Company Order contemplated by Section 3.03 for the authentication and delivery of such Securities or coupons. Any portion of the text of any Security may be set forth on the reverse thereof, with an appropriate reference thereto on the face of the Security.

Unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, Bearer Securities shall have interest coupons attached.

Either Trustee's certificate of authentication shall be in substantially the form set forth in this Article Two.

**SECTION 2.02 Form of Trustee's Certificate of Authentication .**

Subject to Section 6.12, either Trustee's certificate of authentication shall be in substantially the following form:

TRUSTEE'S CERTIFICATE OF AUTHENTICATION

(Certificate of Authentication may be executed by either Trustee)

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_, as U.S. Trustee, certifies that this is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

\_\_\_\_\_,  
as U.S. Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Authorized Officer

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_, as Canadian Trustee, certifies that this is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

\_\_\_\_\_,  
as Canadian Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Authorized Officer

**SECTION 2.03 Securities Issuable in Global Form .**

If Securities of or within a series are issuable in global form, as specified and contemplated by Section 3.01, then any such Security shall represent such of the Outstanding Securities of such series as shall be specified therein and may provide that it shall represent the aggregate amount of Outstanding Securities of such series from time to time endorsed thereon and that the aggregate amount of Outstanding Securities of such series represented thereby may from time to time be increased or decreased to reflect exchanges. Any endorsement of a Security in global form to reflect the amount, or any increase or decrease in the amount, of Outstanding Securities represented thereby shall be made by the Trustees in such manner and upon instructions given by the Holder or its nominee as shall be specified therein or in the Company Order to be delivered to the Trustees pursuant to Section 3.03 or 3.04. Subject to the provisions of Sections 3.03 and 3.04 (if applicable), the Trustees shall deliver and redeliver any Security in global form in the manner and upon instructions given by the Holder or its nominee as shall be specified therein or in the applicable Company Order. If a Company Order pursuant to Section 3.03 or Section 3.04 has been, or simultaneously is, delivered, any instructions by the Company with respect to endorsement or delivery or redelivery of a Security in global form shall be in writing but need not comply with Section 1.03 and need not be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel.

Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 3.07, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, payment of principal of, premium (if any) and interest (if any) on any Security in permanent global form shall be made to the Holder or its nominee specified therein.

Notwithstanding Section 3.09 and except as provided in the preceding paragraph, the Company, the Trustees and any agent of the Company and the Trustees shall treat as the Holder of such principal amount of Outstanding Securities represented by a permanent global Security (i) in the case of a permanent global Security in registered form, the Holder of such permanent global Security in registered form, or (ii) in the case of a permanent global Security in bearer form, the Depository.

### **ARTICLE THREE THE SECURITIES**

#### **SECTION 3.01 Issuable in Series .**

The aggregate principal amount of Securities which may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited.

The Securities may be issued in one or more series and may be denominated and payable in Dollars or any Foreign Currency. There shall be established in one or more Board Resolutions or pursuant to authority granted by one or more Board Resolutions and set forth in, or determined in the manner provided in, an Officer's Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto, prior to the issuance of Securities of any series, any or all of the following, as applicable:

- (1) the title of the Securities of the series (which shall distinguish the Securities of such series from the Securities of all other series);
- (2) the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of the series and any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of the series that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer (including any restriction or condition on the transferability of the Securities of such series) of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of the series pursuant to Section 3.04, 3.05, 3.06, 9.06, 11.07 or 13.05) and, in the event that no limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series is specified, the Company shall have the right, subject to any terms, conditions or other provisions specified pursuant to this Section 3.01 with respect to the Securities of such series, to re- open such series for the issuance of additional Securities of such series from time to time;
- (3) the extent and manner, if any, to which payment on or in respect of the Securities of the series will be senior or will be subordinated to the prior payment of other liabilities and obligations of the Company, and whether the payment of principal, premium (if any) and interest (if any) will be guaranteed by any other Person and the nature and priority of any security;
- (4) the percentage or percentages of principal amount at which the Securities of the series will be issued;
- (5) the date or dates, or the method by which such date or dates will be determined or extended, on which the Securities of the series may be issued and the date or dates, or the method by which such date or dates will be determined or extended, on which the principal of and premium (if any) on the Securities of the series is payable;

- (6) the rate or rates at which the Securities of the series shall bear interest, whether fixed or variable (if any), or the method by which such rate or rates shall be determined, whether such interest shall be payable in cash or additional Securities of the same series or shall accrue and increase the aggregate principal amount outstanding of such series, the date or dates from which such interest shall accrue, or the method by which such date or dates shall be determined, the Interest Payment Dates on which such interest shall be payable and the Regular Record Date, if any, for the interest payable on any Registered Security on any Interest Payment Date, or the method by which such date or dates shall be determined, and the basis upon which interest shall be calculated if other than on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months;
- (7) the place or places, if any, other than or in addition to the Borough of Manhattan, The City of New York, where the principal of, premium (if any) and interest (if any) on Securities of the series shall be payable, where any Registered Securities of the series may be surrendered for registration of transfer, where Securities of the series may be surrendered for exchange, where Securities of the series that are convertible or exchangeable may be surrendered for conversion or exchange, as applicable and, if different than the location specified in Section 1.06, the place or places where notices or demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of the series and this Indenture may be served;
- (8) the period or periods within which, the date or dates on which, the price or prices at which, the Currency in which, and other terms and conditions upon which Securities of the series may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company, if the Company is to have that option;
- (9) the obligation, if any, of the Company to redeem, repay or purchase Securities of the series pursuant to any sinking fund, amortization or analogous provisions or at the option of a Holder thereof, and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which, the Currency in which, and other terms and conditions upon which Securities of the series shall be redeemed, repaid or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;
- (10) if other than denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof, the denomination or denominations in which any Registered Securities of the series shall be issuable and, if other than denominations of \$5,000, the denomination or denominations in which any Bearer Securities of the series shall be issuable;
- (11) the identity of each Security Registrar and/or Paying Agent;
- (12) if other than the principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of Securities of the series that shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 5.02 or the method by which such portion shall be determined;
- (13) if other than Dollars, the Foreign Currency in which payment of the principal of, premium (if any) or interest (if any) on the Securities of the series shall be payable or in which the Securities of the series shall be denominated and the particular provisions applicable thereto in accordance with, in addition to or in lieu of any of the provisions of Section 3.12;

- (14) whether the amount of payments of principal of, premium (if any) or interest (if any) on the Securities of the series may be determined with reference to an index, formula or other method (which index, formula or method may be based, without limitation, on one or more Currencies, commodities, equity indices or other indices), and the manner in which such amounts shall be determined;
- (15) whether the principal of, premium (if any) or interest (if any) on the Securities of the series are to be payable, at the election of the Company or a Holder thereof, in a Currency other than that in which such Securities are denominated or stated to be payable, the period or periods within which (including the Election Date), and the terms and conditions upon which, such election may be made, and the time and manner of determining the exchange rate between the Currency in which such Securities are denominated or stated to be payable and the Currency in which such Securities are to be so payable, in each case in accordance with, in addition to or in lieu of any of the provisions of Section 3.12;
- (16) the designation of the initial Exchange Rate Agent, if any;
- (17) the applicability, if any, of Sections 14.02 and/or 14.03 to the Securities of the series and any provisions in modification of, in addition to or in lieu of any of the provisions of Article Fourteen that shall be applicable to the Securities of the series;
- (18) provisions, if any, granting special rights to the Holders of Securities of the series upon the occurrence of such events as may be specified;
- (19) any deletions from, modifications of or additions to the Events of Default or covenants (including any deletions from, modifications of or additions to Section 10.09) of the Company with respect to Securities of the series, whether or not such Events of Default or covenants are consistent with the Events of Default or covenants set forth herein;
- (20) whether Securities of the series are to be issuable as Registered Securities, Bearer Securities (with or without coupons) or both, any restrictions applicable to the offer, sale or delivery of Securities of the series, whether any Securities of the series are to be issuable initially in temporary global form and whether any Securities of the series are to be issuable in permanent global form with or without coupons and, if so, whether beneficial owners of interests in any such permanent global Security may exchange such interests for Securities of such series and of like tenor of any authorized form and denomination and the circumstances under which any such exchanges may occur, if other than in the manner provided in Section 3.05, whether Registered Securities of the series may be exchanged for Bearer Securities of the series (if permitted by applicable laws and regulations), whether Bearer Securities of the series may be exchanged for Registered Securities of such series, and the circumstances under which and the place or places where any such exchanges may be made and, if Securities of the series are to be issuable in global form, the designation of any Depositary therefor;
- (21) the date as of which any Bearer Securities of the series and any temporary global Security of the series shall be dated if other than the date of original issuance of the first Security of the series to be issued;
- (22) the Person to whom any interest on any Registered Security of the series shall be payable, if other than the Person in whose name that Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest, the manner in which, or the Person to whom, any interest on any Bearer Security of the series shall be payable, if otherwise than upon presentation and surrender of the coupons appertaining thereto as they severally mature, and the extent to which, or the manner in which, any interest payable on a temporary global Security on an Interest Payment Date will be paid if other than in the manner provided in Section 3.04;

- (23) if Securities of the series are to be issuable in definitive form (whether upon original issue or upon exchange of a temporary Security of such series) only upon receipt of certain certificates or other documents or satisfaction of other conditions, the form and/or terms of such certificates, documents or conditions;
- (24) if the Securities of the series are to be issued upon the exercise of warrants or subscription receipts, the time, manner and place for such Securities to be authenticated and delivered;
- (25) if the Securities of the series are to be convertible into or exchangeable for any securities or property of any Person (including the Company), the terms and conditions upon which such Securities will be so convertible or exchangeable, and any additions or changes to permit or facilitate such conversion or exchange;
- (26) provisions as to modification, amendment or variation of any rights or terms attaching to the Securities;
- (27) whether the Securities will be secured or unsecured; and
- (28) any other terms, conditions, rights and preferences (or limitations on such rights and preferences) relating to the series (which terms shall not be inconsistent with the requirements of Trust Indenture Legislation or the provisions of this Indenture).

All Securities of any one series and the coupons appertaining to any Bearer Securities of such series shall be substantially identical except, in the case of Registered Securities, as to denomination and except as may otherwise be provided in or pursuant to such Board Resolution (subject to Section 3.03) and set forth in such Officer's Certificate or in any such indenture supplemental hereto. Not all Securities of any one series need be issued at the same time, and, unless otherwise provided, a series may be reopened for issuances of additional Securities of such series.

If any of the terms of the series are established by action taken pursuant to one or more Board Resolutions, such Board Resolutions shall be delivered to the Trustees at or prior to the delivery of the Officer's Certificate setting forth the terms of the series.

#### **SECTION 3.02 Denominations .**

The Securities of each series shall be issuable in such denominations as shall be specified as contemplated by Section 3.01. With respect to Securities of any series denominated in Dollars, in the absence of any such provisions, the Registered Securities of such series, other than Registered Securities issued in global form (which may be of any denomination), shall be issuable in denominations of \$1,000 and any integral multiple thereof and the Bearer Securities of such series, other than the Bearer Securities issued in global form (which may be of any denomination), shall be issuable in a denomination of \$5,000 and any integral multiples thereof.

### **SECTION 3.03 Execution, Authentication, Delivery and Dating .**

The Securities and any coupons appertaining thereto shall be executed on behalf of the Company by an Officer. The signature of an Officer on the Securities or coupons may be the manual or facsimile signatures of the present or any future such authorized officer and may be imprinted or otherwise reproduced on the Securities.

Securities or coupons bearing the manual or facsimile signatures of individuals who were at any time the proper officers of the Company shall bind the Company, notwithstanding that such individuals or any of them have ceased to hold such offices prior to the authentication and delivery of such Securities or did not hold such offices at the date of such Securities or coupons.

At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities of any series together with any coupons appertaining thereto, executed by the Company to the applicable Trustee for authentication, together with a Company Order for the authentication and delivery of such Securities, and the applicable Trustee in accordance with such Company Order shall authenticate and deliver such Securities; *provided, however*, that, in connection with its original issuance, no Bearer Security shall be mailed or otherwise delivered to any location in the United States; *provided further* that, unless otherwise specified with respect to any series of Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, a Bearer Security may be delivered in connection with its original issuance only if the Person entitled to receive such Bearer Security shall have furnished a certificate in the form set forth in Exhibit A-1 to this Indenture, dated no earlier than 15 days prior to the earlier of the date on which such Bearer Security is delivered and the date on which any temporary Security first becomes exchangeable for such Bearer Security in accordance with the terms of such temporary Security and this Indenture. If any Security shall be represented by a permanent global Bearer Security, then, for purposes of this Section 3.03 and Section 3.04, the notation of a beneficial owner's interest therein upon original issuance of such Security or upon exchange of a portion of a temporary global Security shall be deemed to be delivery in connection with its original issuance of such beneficial owner's interest in such permanent global Security. Except as permitted by Section 3.06, the Trustees shall not authenticate and deliver any Bearer Security unless all appurtenant coupons for interest then matured have been detached and cancelled. If not all the Securities of any series are to be issued at one time and if the Board Resolution or supplemental indenture establishing such series shall so permit, such Company Order may set forth procedures acceptable to the Trustees for the issuance of such Securities and determining terms of particular Securities of such series such as interest rate, Stated Maturity, date of issuance and date from which interest shall accrue.

In authenticating such Securities, and accepting the additional responsibilities under this Indenture in relation to such Securities, the Trustees shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Trust Indenture Legislation and TIA Sections 315(a) through 315(d)) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating:

- (a) that the form or forms of such Securities and any coupons have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture;
- (b) that the terms of such Securities and any coupons have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture;
- (c) that such Securities, together with any coupons appertaining thereto, when completed by appropriate insertions and executed and delivered by the Company to the applicable Trustee for authentication in accordance with this Indenture, authenticated and delivered by the applicable Trustee in accordance with this Indenture and issued by the Company in the manner and subject to any conditions specified in such Opinion of Counsel, will constitute the legal, valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable in accordance with their terms;

(d) the execution and delivery by the Company of such Securities, any coupons and any supplemental indenture will not contravene the articles of incorporation or continuance, or such other constating documents then in effect, if any, or the by-laws of the Company, or violate applicable laws; and

(e) that the Company has the corporate power to issue such Securities and any coupons, and has duly taken all necessary corporate action with respect to such issuance.

Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 3.01 and of the preceding two paragraphs, if not all the Securities of any series are to be issued at one time, it shall not be necessary to deliver the Officer's Certificate otherwise required pursuant to Section 3.01 or the Company Order and Opinion of Counsel otherwise required pursuant to the preceding two paragraphs prior to or at the time of issuance of each Security, but such documents shall be delivered prior to or at the time of issuance of the first Security of such series.

The Trustees shall not be required to authenticate and deliver any such Securities if the issue of such Securities pursuant to this Indenture will affect the Trustees' own rights, duties or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture or otherwise in a manner which is not reasonably acceptable to the Trustees.

Each Registered Security shall be dated the date of its authentication and each Bearer Security shall be dated as of the date specified as contemplated by Section 3.01.

No Security or coupon shall entitle a Holder to any benefit under this Indenture or be valid or obligatory for any purpose unless there appears on such Security a certificate of authentication substantially in the form provided for herein duly executed by the applicable Trustee by manual signature of an authorized officer thereof, and such certificate upon any Security shall be conclusive evidence, and the only evidence, that such Security has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder and is entitled to the benefits of this Indenture. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if any Security shall have been authenticated and delivered hereunder but never issued and sold by the Company, and the Company shall deliver such Security to the Trustees for cancellation as provided in Section 3.10 together with a written statement (which need not comply with Section 1.03 and need not be accompanied by an Opinion of Counsel) stating that such Security has never been issued and sold by the Company, for all purposes of this Indenture such Security shall be deemed never to have been authenticated and delivered hereunder and shall never entitle a Holder to the benefits of this Indenture.

#### **SECTION 3.04 Temporary Securities .**

Pending the preparation of definitive Securities of any series, the Company may execute, and upon Company Order the applicable Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, temporary Securities which are printed, lithographed, typewritten, mimeographed or otherwise produced, in any authorized denomination, substantially of the tenor of the definitive Securities in lieu of which they are issued, in registered form or, if authorized, in bearer form with one or more coupons or without coupons, and with such appropriate insertions, omissions, substitutions and other variations as the Officer executing such Securities may determine, as conclusively evidenced by their execution of such Securities. Such temporary Securities may be in global form.

Except in the case of temporary Securities in global form (which shall be exchanged in accordance with the provisions of the following paragraphs), if temporary Securities of any series are issued, the Company will cause definitive Securities of that series to be prepared without unreasonable delay. After the preparation of definitive Securities of such series, the temporary Securities of such series shall be exchangeable for definitive Securities of such series upon surrender of the temporary Securities of such series at the office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment for that series, without charge to the Holder. Upon surrender for cancellation of any one or more temporary Securities of any series (accompanied by any unmatured coupons appertaining thereto), the Company shall execute and the applicable Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a like principal amount of definitive Securities of the same series of authorized denominations; *provided, however*, that no definitive Bearer Security shall be delivered in exchange for a temporary Registered Security; *provided further* that a definitive Bearer Security shall be delivered in exchange for a temporary Bearer Security only in compliance with the conditions set forth in Section 3.03. Until so exchanged the temporary Securities of any series shall in all respects be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of such series.

If temporary Securities of any series are issued in global form, any such temporary global Security shall, unless otherwise provided therein, be delivered to the office of the Depositary for credit to the respective accounts of the beneficial owners of such Securities (or to such other accounts as they may direct).

Without unnecessary delay, but in any event not later than the date specified in, or determined pursuant to the terms of, any such temporary global Security (the “**Exchange Date**”), the Company shall deliver to the Trustees definitive Securities, in aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of such temporary global Security, executed by the Company. On or after the Exchange Date, such temporary global Security shall be surrendered by the Depositary to the Trustees, as the Company’s agent for such purpose, to be exchanged, in whole or from time to time in part, for definitive Securities without charge and the applicable Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in exchange for each portion of such temporary global Security, an equal aggregate principal amount of definitive Securities of the same series of authorized denominations and of like tenor as the portion of such temporary global Security to be exchanged. The definitive Securities to be delivered in exchange for any such temporary global Security shall be in bearer form, registered form, permanent global bearer form or permanent global registered form, or any combination thereof, as specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, and, if any combination thereof is so specified, as requested by the beneficial owner thereof; *provided, however*, that, unless otherwise specified in such temporary global Security, upon such presentation by the Depositary, such temporary global Security is accompanied by a certificate dated the Exchange Date or a subsequent date and signed by the Depositary as to the portion of such temporary global Security held for its account then to be exchanged and a certificate dated the Exchange Date or a subsequent date, each in the form set forth in Exhibit A-2 to this Indenture (or in such other form as may be established pursuant to Section 3.01); *provided further* that definitive Bearer Securities shall be delivered in exchange for a portion of a temporary global Security only in compliance with the requirements of Section 3.03.

Unless otherwise specified in such temporary global Security, the interest of a beneficial owner of Securities of a series in a temporary global Security shall be exchanged for definitive Securities of the same series and of like tenor following the Exchange Date when the account holder instructs the Depositary to request such exchange on his behalf and delivers to the Depositary a certificate in the form set forth in Exhibit A-1 to this Indenture (or in such other form as may be established pursuant to Section 3.01), dated no earlier than 15 days prior to the Exchange Date, copies of which certificate shall be available from the offices of the Depositary, the Trustees, any Authenticating Agent appointed for such series of Securities and each Paying Agent. Unless otherwise specified in such temporary global Security, any such exchange shall be made free of charge to the beneficial owners of such temporary global Security, except that a Person receiving definitive Securities must bear the cost of insurance, postage, transportation and the like in the event that such Person does not take delivery of such definitive Securities in person at the offices of the Depositary. Definitive Securities in bearer form to be delivered in exchange for any portion of a temporary global Security shall be delivered only outside the United States.

Until exchanged in full as hereinabove provided, the temporary Securities of any series shall in all respects be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of the same series and of like tenor authenticated and delivered hereunder, except that, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, interest payable on a temporary global Security on an Interest Payment Date for Securities of such series occurring prior to the applicable Exchange Date shall be payable to the Depository on such Interest Payment Date upon delivery by the Depository to the Trustees of a certificate or certificates in the form set forth in Exhibit A-2 to this Indenture (or in such other form as may be established pursuant to Section 3.01), for credit without further interest thereon on or after such Interest Payment Date to the respective accounts of the Persons who are the beneficial owners of such temporary global Security on such Interest Payment Date and who have each delivered to the Depository a certificate dated no earlier than 15 days prior to the Interest Payment Date occurring prior to such Exchange Date in the form set forth in Exhibit A-1 to this Indenture (or in such other form as may be established pursuant to Section 3.01). Notwithstanding anything to the contrary herein contained, the certifications made pursuant to this paragraph shall satisfy the certification requirements of the preceding two paragraphs of this Section 3.04 and of the third paragraph of Section 3.03 and the interests of the Persons who are the beneficial owners of the temporary global Security with respect to which such certification was made will be exchanged for definitive Securities of the same series and of like tenor on the Exchange Date or the date of certification if such date occurs after the Exchange Date, without further act or deed by such beneficial owners. Except as otherwise provided in this paragraph, no payments of principal of, premium (if any) or interest (if any) owing with respect to a beneficial interest in a temporary global Security will be made unless and until such interest in such temporary global Security shall have been exchanged for an interest in a definitive Security. Any interest so received by the Depository and not paid as herein provided shall be returned to the Trustees immediately prior to the expiration of two years after such Interest Payment Date in order to be repaid to the Company in accordance with Section 10.03.

### **SECTION 3.05 Registration, Registration of Transfer and Exchange .**

So long as required by Trust Indenture Legislation, the Company shall cause to be kept at the Corporate Trust Offices of the Trustees a register for each series of Securities (the registers maintained in the Corporate Trust Offices of the Trustees and in any other office or agency of the Company in a Place of Payment being herein sometimes collectively referred to as the “**Central Register**”) in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Company shall provide for the registration of the Holders of Registered Securities and of transfers of Registered Securities. The Central Register shall be in written form or any other form capable of being converted into written form within a reasonable time. At all reasonable times, the Central Register shall be open to inspection by the Trustees. The Company will cause the particulars of each such issue, exchange or transfer of Securities to be recorded in the Central Register. There shall be two such Central Registers, one for U.S. Securities and one for Canadian Securities. The Company hereby appoints the Canadian Trustee as the Central Registrar and Transfer Agent for the Canadian Securities and the U.S. Trustee as the Central Registrar and Transfer Agent for the U.S. Securities (collectively, the “**Central Securities Registrars**”). If permitted by Trust Indenture Legislation, the Company may appoint a Person other than the Company or a trust corporation registered under the *Trust and Loan Companies Act*, S.C. 1991, c. 45 as the Central Securities Registrar; provided that, no such removal or replacement shall be effective until a successor Central Security Registrar with respect to such series of Registered Securities shall have been appointed by the Company and shall have accepted such appointment by the Company. In the event that the Trustees shall not be or shall cease to be the Central Securities Registrar with respect to a series of Securities, they shall have the right to examine the Central Register for such series at all reasonable times. There shall be only one Central Securities Register for such series of Securities.

The Company may, subject to the consent of the applicable Trustee, also cause to be maintained a branch register (a “ **Branch Register** ”) or Branch Registers of Holders of Securities in accordance with Section 11.02 in the same manner and containing the same information with respect to each entry contained therein as contained in the Central Register. A copy of every entry in a Branch Register shall, promptly after the entry is made, be transmitted to the Central Security Registrar. If there is a conflict between the information contained in the Central Register and the information contained in the Branch Register, the information contained in the Central Register shall prevail. The Central Register together with each Branch Register are collectively referred to herein as the “ **Security Register** ”. At all reasonable times, the Security Register shall be open to inspection by the Trustees. The Company may appoint from time to time one or more branch security registrars (“ **Branch Security Registrars** ”) and may from time to time rescind any such appointment. The Central Security Registrar together with each Branch Security Registrar are collectively referred to herein as the “ **Security Registrar** ”.

Upon surrender for registration of transfer of any Registered Security of any series at the office or agency in a Place of Payment for that series, the Company shall execute, and the applicable Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in the name of the designated transferee, one or more new Registered Securities of the same series, of any authorized denominations and of a like aggregate principal amount and tenor.

For Canadian Securities, the Security must be duly endorsed for transfer or in a duly endorsed transferable form as applicable and must comply with the current industry practice in accordance with the Securities Transfer Association of Canada.

At the option of the Holder, Registered Securities of any series may be exchanged for other Registered Securities of the same series, of any authorized denomination and of a like aggregate principal amount and tenor, upon surrender of the Registered Securities to be exchanged at such office or agency. Whenever any Registered Securities are so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, and the applicable Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, the Registered Securities which the Holder making the exchange is entitled to receive. Unless otherwise specified with respect to any series of Securities as contemplated by Section 3.01, Bearer Securities may not be issued in exchange for Registered Securities. The applicable Trustee shall update the Security Register, or, if the applicable Trustee is not the Authenticating Agent, the applicable Trustee shall immediately provide a copy of the new Registered Security to the Central Registrar so that the Security Register may be updated.

If (but only if) expressly permitted in or pursuant to the applicable Board Resolution and (subject to Section 3.03) set forth in the applicable Officer’s Certificate, or in any indenture supplemental hereto, delivered as contemplated by Section 3.01, at the option of the Holder, Bearer Securities of any series may be exchanged for Registered Securities of the same series of any authorized denomination and of a like aggregate principal amount and tenor, upon surrender of the Bearer Securities to be exchanged at the office of the applicable Trustee, with all unmatured coupons and all matured coupons in default thereto appertaining. If the Holder of a Bearer Security is unable to produce any such unmatured coupon or coupons or matured coupon or coupons in default, any such permitted exchange may be effected if the Bearer Securities are accompanied by payment in funds acceptable to the Company in an amount equal to the face amount of such missing coupon or coupons, or the surrender of such missing coupon or coupons may be waived by the Company and the Trustees if there is furnished to them such security or indemnity as they may require to save each of them and any Paying Agent harmless. If thereafter the Holder of such Security shall surrender to any Paying Agent any such missing coupon in respect of which such a payment shall have been made, such Holder shall be entitled to receive the amount of such payment; *provided, however*, that, except as otherwise provided in Section 10.02, interest represented by coupons shall be payable only upon presentation and surrender of those coupons at an office or agency located outside the United States. Notwithstanding the foregoing, in case a Bearer Security of any series is surrendered at any such office or agency in a permitted exchange for a Registered Security of the same series and like tenor after the close of business at such office or agency on (i) any Regular Record Date and before the opening of business at such office or agency on the relevant Interest Payment Date, or (ii) any Special Record Date and before the opening of business at such office or agency on the related proposed date for payment of Defaulted Interest, such Bearer Security shall be surrendered without the coupon relating to such Interest Payment Date or proposed date for payment, as the case may be, and interest or Defaulted Interest, as the case may be, will not be payable on such Interest Payment Date or proposed date for payment, as the case may be, in respect of the Registered Security issued in exchange for such Bearer Security, but will be payable only to the Holder of such coupon when due in accordance with the provisions of this Indenture.

Whenever any Securities are so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, and the applicable Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, the Securities which the Holder making the exchange is entitled to receive.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, any permanent global Security shall be exchangeable only as provided in this paragraph. If any beneficial owner of an interest in a permanent global Security is entitled to exchange such interest for Securities of such series and of like tenor and principal amount of another authorized form and denomination, as contemplated by Section 3.01 and provided that any applicable notice provided in the permanent global Security shall have been given to the Company, the Trustees and the Depository, then without unnecessary delay but in any event not later than the earliest date on which such interest may be so exchanged, the Company shall deliver to the applicable Trustee definitive Securities in aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of such beneficial owner's interest in such permanent global Security, executed by the Company. On or after the earliest date on which such interests may be so exchanged, such permanent global Security shall be surrendered by the Depository or such other depository as shall be specified in the Company Order with respect thereto to the applicable Trustee, as the Company's agent for such purpose, to be exchanged in whole or from time to time in part, for definitive Securities without charge, and the applicable Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in exchange for each portion of such permanent global Security, an equal aggregate principal amount of definitive Securities of the same series of authorized denominations and of like tenor as the portion of such permanent global Security to be exchanged which, unless the Securities of the series are not issuable both as Bearer Securities and as Registered Securities, as specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, shall be in the form of Bearer Securities or Registered Securities, or any combination thereof, as shall be specified by the beneficial owner thereof. The applicable Trustee shall promptly provide to the Depository a replacement global Security in the aggregate principal amount of the global Security not being so exchanged. The applicable Trustee shall note the exchange on the Security Register. No Bearer Security delivered in exchange for a portion of a permanent global Security shall be mailed or otherwise delivered to any location in the United States. If a Registered Security is issued in exchange for any portion of a permanent global Security after the close of business at the office or agency where such exchange occurs on (i) any Regular Record Date and before the opening of business at such office or agency on the relevant Interest Payment Date, or (ii) any Special Record Date and before the opening of business at such office or agency on the related proposed date for payment of Defaulted Interest, interest or Defaulted Interest, as the case may be, will not be payable on such Interest Payment Date or proposed date for payment, as the case may be, in respect of such Registered Security, but will be payable on such Interest Payment Date or proposed date for payment, as the case may be, only to the Person to whom interest in respect of such portion of such permanent global Security is payable in accordance with the provisions of this Indenture.

Transfers of global Securities shall be limited to transfers in whole, but not in part, to the Depositary, its successors or their respective nominees. If at any time the Depositary for Securities of a series notifies the Company that it is unwilling, unable or no longer qualifies to continue as Depositary for Securities of such series or if at any time the Depositary for such series shall no longer be registered or in good standing under the Exchange Act, or other applicable statute or regulation, the Company shall appoint a successor Depositary for the Securities of such series. If a successor to the Depositary for Securities of such series is not appointed by the Company within 90 days after the Company receives such notice or becomes aware of such condition, as the case may be, the Company's election pursuant to Section 3.01 shall no longer be effective with respect to the Securities for such series and the Company will execute, and the applicable Trustee, upon receipt of a Company Order for the authentication and delivery of definitive Securities of such series, will authenticate and deliver Securities of such series in definitive, registered form, in authorized denominations, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the global Security or Securities representing such series in exchange for such global Security or Securities.

The Company may at any time and in its sole discretion determine that the Securities of any series issued in the form of one or more global Securities shall no longer be represented by such global Security or Securities. In such event the Company will execute, and the applicable Trustee, upon receipt of a Company Order for the authentication and delivery of definitive Securities of such series, will authenticate and deliver Securities of such series in definitive, registered form, in authorized denominations, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the global Security or Securities representing such series in exchange for such global Security or Securities.

Interests of a beneficial owner in global Securities may also be transferred or exchanged for definitive Securities if, after the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to such Securities, and while such Event of Default is continuing, such owner notifies the Trustees in writing that it wishes to receive a Security in definitive, registered form and provides to the Trustees evidence reasonably satisfactory to the Trustees of its ownership interest in such Securities. In such event the Company will execute, and the applicable Trustee, upon receipt of a Company Order for the authentication and delivery of definitive Securities of such series, will authenticate and deliver Securities of such series in definitive, registered form, in authorized denominations, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the global Security or Securities representing such series in exchange for such global Security or Securities.

Upon the exchange of a global Security for Securities in definitive registered form, such global Security shall be cancelled by the applicable Trustee. Securities issued in exchange for a global Security pursuant to this Section 3.05 shall be registered in such names and in such authorized denominations as the Depositary for such global Security, pursuant to instructions from its direct or indirect participants or otherwise, shall instruct the applicable Trustee in writing. The applicable Trustee shall deliver such Securities to the Persons in whose names such Securities are so registered.

All Securities issued upon any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities shall be the valid obligations of the Company, evidencing the same debt, and entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture, as the Securities surrendered upon such registration of transfer or exchange.

Every Registered Security presented or surrendered for registration of transfer or for exchange shall (if so required by the Company or the Security Registrar or applicable securities transfer industry practices) be duly endorsed, or be accompanied by a written instrument of transfer, in form satisfactory to the Company and the Security Registrar, duly executed by the Holder thereof or his attorney duly authorized in writing.

Any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities may be subject to service charges by the Central Securities Registrar and the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in connection with any registration of transfer or exchange of Securities, other than exchanges pursuant to Section 3.04, 9.06, 11.07 or 13.05 not involving any transfer.

The Company shall not be required (i) to issue, register the transfer of or exchange Securities of any series in definitive form during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of the selection for redemption of Securities of that series under Section 11.03 or 12.03 and ending at the close of business on (A) if Securities of the series are issuable only as Registered Securities, the day of the mailing of the relevant notice of redemption and (B) if Securities of the series are issuable as Bearer Securities, the day of the first publication of the relevant notice of redemption or, (C) if Securities of the series are also issuable as Registered Securities and there is no publication, the mailing of the relevant notice of redemption, or (ii) to register the transfer of or exchange any Registered Security in definitive form so selected for redemption in whole or in part, except the unredeemed portion of any Security being redeemed in part, or (iii) to exchange any Bearer Security so selected for redemption except that such a Bearer Security may be exchanged for a Registered Security of that series and like tenor; *provided* that such Registered Security shall be simultaneously surrendered for redemption, or (iv) to issue, register the transfer of or exchange any Security in definitive form which has been surrendered for repayment at the option of the Holder, except the portion, if any, of such Security not to be so repaid.

#### **SECTION 3.06 Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost and Stolen Securities .**

If any mutilated Security or a Security with a mutilated coupon appertaining to it is surrendered to the applicable Trustee, the Company shall execute and the applicable Trustee shall authenticate and deliver in exchange therefor a new Security of the same series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding, with coupons corresponding to the coupons, if any, appertaining to the surrendered Security, or, in case any such mutilated Security or coupon has become or is about to become due and payable, the Company in its discretion may, instead of issuing a new Security, with coupons corresponding to the coupons, if any, appertaining to the surrendered Security, pay such Security or coupon. If there shall be delivered to the Company and to the Trustees (i) evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of any Security or coupon and (ii) such security (or surety in the case of the Canadian Trustee) or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them and any agent of either of them harmless, then, in the absence of notice to the Company or the Trustees that such Security or coupon has been acquired by a protected purchaser (as defined in Article 8 of the UCC), the Company shall execute and upon Company Order the applicable Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, in lieu of any such destroyed, lost or stolen Security or in exchange for the Security for which a destroyed, lost or stolen coupon appertains (with all appurtenant coupons not destroyed, lost or stolen), a new Security of the same series and of like tenor and principal amount and bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding, with coupons corresponding to the coupons, if any, appertaining to such destroyed, lost or stolen Security or to the Security to which such destroyed, lost or stolen coupon appertains.

Notwithstanding the provisions of the previous two paragraphs, in case any such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security or coupon has become or is about to become due and payable, the Company in its discretion may, instead of issuing a new Security, with coupons corresponding to the coupons, if any, appertaining to such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security or to the Security to which such mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen coupon appertains, pay such Security or coupon; *provided, however*, that payment of principal of, premium (if any) and interest (if any) on Bearer Securities shall, except as otherwise provided in Section 10.02, be payable only at an office or agency located outside the United States and, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, any interest on Bearer Securities shall be payable only upon presentation and surrender of the coupons appertaining thereto.

Upon the issuance of any new Security under this Section 3.06, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustees) connected therewith.

Every new Security of any series with its coupons, if any, issued pursuant to this Section 3.06 in lieu of any mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security or in exchange for a Security to which a mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen coupon appertains, shall constitute an original additional contractual obligation of the Company, whether or not the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security and its coupons, if any, or the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen coupon shall be at any time enforceable by anyone, and the Holders of such Security shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with the Holders of any and all other Securities of that series and their coupons, if any, duly issued hereunder.

The provisions of this Section 3.06 as amended or supplemented pursuant to this Indenture with respect to a particular series of Securities or generally are exclusive and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) all other rights and remedies with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities or coupons.

**SECTION 3.07 Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest; Interest Rights Preserved; Optional Interest Reset .**

(a) Unless otherwise provided as contemplated by Section 3.01 with respect to any series of Securities, interest (if any) on any Registered Security which is payable, and is punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date shall be paid by the Paying Agent to the Person in whose name such Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the Regular Record Date for such interest at the office or agency of the Company maintained for such purpose pursuant to Section 10.02; *provided, however*, that each installment of interest (if any) on any Registered Security may at the Company's option be paid by (i) mailing a check for such interest, payable to or upon the written order of the Person entitled thereto pursuant to Section 3.09, to the address of such Person as it appears on the Security Register or (ii) wire transfer to an account located in the United States maintained by the payee of a Holder of \$2.0 million or more in aggregate principal amount of such Securities (with wire transfer instructions provided to the Trustees not less than 15 days prior to payment of interest). The Paying Agent shall confirm in writing to the Canadian Trustee upon payment having been made to Holders of Canadian Securities. Unless otherwise provided as contemplated by Section 3.01 with respect to any series of Securities, principal and premium (if any) paid in relation to any Security shall be paid to the Holder of such Security only upon presentation and surrender of such Security at the office or agency of the Company maintained for such purpose pursuant to Section 10.02.

Unless otherwise provided as contemplated by Section 3.01 with respect to the Securities of any series, payment of interest (if any) may be made, in the case of a Bearer Security, by transfer to an account located outside the United States maintained by the payee.

Unless otherwise provided as contemplated by Section 3.01, every permanent global Security will provide that interest (if any) payable on any Interest Payment Date will be paid to the Depository with respect to that portion of such permanent global Security held for its account by the Depository, for the purpose of permitting the Depository to credit the interest (if any) received by it in respect of such permanent global Security to the accounts of the beneficial owners thereof.

Any interest on any Registered Security of any series which is payable, but is not punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date shall forthwith cease to be payable to the Holder on the relevant Regular Record Date by virtue of having been such Holder, and such defaulted interest and, if applicable, interest on such defaulted interest (to the extent lawful) at the rate specified in the Securities of such series (such defaulted interest and, if applicable, interest thereon herein collectively called “ **Defaulted Interest** ”) must be paid by the Company as provided for in either clause (1) or (2), at the Company’s election:

(1) The Company may elect to make payment of any Defaulted Interest to the Persons in whose names the Registered Securities of such series (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner. The Company shall notify the Trustees in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on each Registered Security of such series and the date of the proposed payment, and at the same time the Company shall deposit with the applicable Trustee an amount of money in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Sections 3.12(b), 3.12(d) and 3.12(e)) equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements satisfactory to the Trustees for such deposit on or prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this clause provided. Thereupon the Trustees shall fix a Special Record Date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest which shall be not more than 15 days and not less than 10 days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than 10 days after the receipt by the Trustees of the notice of the proposed payment. The Trustees shall promptly notify the Company of such Special Record Date and, in the name and at the expense of the Company, shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor to be given in the manner provided in Section 1.07, not less than 10 days prior to such Special Record Date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the Special Record Date therefor having been so given, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Persons in whose name the Registered Securities of such series (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on such Special Record Date and shall no longer be payable pursuant to the following clause (2).

(2) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on the Registered Securities of any series in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such Securities may be listed, and, upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustees of the proposed payment pursuant to this clause, such manner of payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustees.

(b) The provisions of this Section 307(b) may be made applicable to any series of Securities pursuant to Section 3.01 (with such modifications, additions or substitutions as may be specified pursuant to such Section 3.01) . The interest rate (or the spread or spread multiplier used to calculate such interest rate, if applicable) on any Security of such series may be reset by the Company on the date or dates specified on the face of such Security (each an “ **Optional Reset Date** ”). The Company may exercise such option with respect to such Security by notifying the Trustees of such exercise at least 50 but not more than 60 days prior to an Optional Reset Date for such Security. Not later than 40 days prior to each Optional Reset Date, the Trustees shall transmit, in the manner provided for in Section 1.07, to the Holder of any such Security a notice (the “ **Reset Notice** ”) indicating whether the Company has elected to reset the interest rate (or the spread or spread multiplier used to calculate such interest rate, if applicable), and if so (i) such new interest rate (or such new spread or spread multiplier, if applicable) and (ii) the provisions, if any, for redemption during the period from such Optional Reset Date to the next Optional Reset Date or if there is no such next Optional Reset Date, to the Stated Maturity of such Security (each such period a “ **Subsequent Interest Period** ”), including the date or dates on which or the period or periods during which and the price or prices at which such redemption may occur during the Subsequent Interest Period.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, not later than 20 days prior to the Optional Reset Date, the Company may, at its option, revoke the interest rate (or the spread or spread multiplier used to calculate such interest rate, if applicable) provided for in the Reset Notice and establish an interest rate (or the spread or spread multiplier, if applicable) that is higher than the interest rate (or the spread or spread multiplier, if applicable) provided for in the Reset Notice, for the Subsequent Interest Period by causing the Trustees to transmit, in the manner provided for in Section 1.07, notice of such higher interest rate (or such higher spread or spread multiplier, if applicable) to the Holder of such Security. Such notice shall be irrevocable. All Securities with respect to which the interest rate (or the spread or spread multiplier used to calculate such interest rate, if applicable) is reset on an Optional Reset Date, and with respect to which the Holders of such Securities have not tendered such Securities for repayment (or have validly revoked any such tender) pursuant to the next succeeding paragraph, will bear such higher interest rate (or such higher spread or spread multiplier, if applicable).

The Holder of any such Security will have the option to elect repayment by the Company of the principal of such Security on each Optional Reset Date at a price equal to the principal amount thereof plus interest accrued to such Optional Reset Date. In order to obtain repayment on an Optional Reset Date, the Holder must follow the procedures set forth in Article Thirteen for repayment at the option of Holders except that the period for delivery or notification to the Trustees shall be at least 25 but not more than 35 days prior to such Optional Reset Date and except that, if the Holder has tendered any Security for repayment pursuant to the Reset Notice, the Holder may, by written notice to the Trustees, revoke such tender or repayment until the close of business on the tenth day before such Optional Reset Date.

Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section 3.07 and Section 3.05, each Security delivered under this Indenture upon registration of transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any other Security shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, which were carried by such other Security.

### **SECTION 3.08 Optional Extension of Stated Maturity .**

The provisions of this Section 3.08 may be made applicable to any series of Securities pursuant to Section 3.01 (with such modifications, additions or substitutions as may be specified pursuant to such Section 3.01) . The Stated Maturity of any Security of such series may be extended at the option of the Company for the period or periods specified on the face of such Security (each an “ **Extension Period** ”) up to but not beyond the date (the “ **Final Maturity** ”) set forth on the face of such Security. The Company may exercise such option with respect to any Security by notifying the Trustees of such exercise at least 50 but not more than 60 days prior to the Stated Maturity of such Security in effect prior to the exercise of such option (the “ **Original Stated Maturity** ”). If the Company exercises such option, the Trustees shall transmit, in the manner provided for in Section 1.07, to the Holder of such Security not later than 40 days prior to the Original Stated Maturity a notice (the “ **Extension Notice** ”) indicating (i) the election of the Company to extend the Stated Maturity, (ii) the new Stated Maturity, (iii) the interest rate (if any) applicable to the Extension Period and (iv) the provisions, if any, for redemption during such Extension Period. Upon the Trustees’ transmittal of the Extension Notice, the Stated Maturity of such Security shall be extended automatically and, except as modified by the Extension Notice and as described in the next paragraph, such Security will have the same terms as prior to the transmittal of such Extension Notice.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, not later than 20 days before the Original Stated Maturity of such Security, the Company may, at its option, revoke the interest rate provided for in the Extension Notice and establish a higher interest rate for the Extension Period by causing the Trustees to transmit, in the manner provided for in Section 1.07, notice of such higher interest rate to the Holder of such Security. Such notice shall be irrevocable. All Securities with respect to which the Stated Maturity is extended will bear such higher interest rate.

If the Company extends the Maturity of any Security, the Holder will have the option to elect repayment of such Security by the Company on the Original Stated Maturity at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus interest accrued to such date. In order to obtain repayment on the Original Stated Maturity once the Company has extended the Maturity thereof, the Holder must follow the procedures set forth in Article Thirteen for repayment at the option of Holders, except that the period for delivery or notification to the Trustees shall be at least 25 but not more than 35 days prior to the Original Stated Maturity and except that, if the Holder has tendered any Security for repayment pursuant to an Extension Notice, the Holder may by written notice to the Trustees revoke such tender for repayment until the close of business on the tenth day before the Original Stated Maturity.

### **SECTION 3.09 Persons Deemed Owners .**

Prior to due presentment of a Registered Security for registration of transfer, the Company, the Trustees and any agent of the Company or the Trustees may treat the Person in whose name such Registered Security is registered as the owner of such Registered Security for the purpose of receiving payment of principal of, premium (if any) and (subject to Sections 3.05 and 3.07) interest (if any) on such Security and for all other purposes whatsoever, whether or not such Security be overdue, and none of the Company, the Trustees or any agent of the Company or the Trustees shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

Title to any Bearer Security and any coupons appertaining thereto shall pass by delivery. The Company, the Trustees and any agent of the Company or the Trustees may treat the bearer of any Bearer Security and the bearer of any coupon as the absolute owner of such Security or coupon for the purpose of receiving payment thereof or on account thereof and for all other purposes whatsoever, whether or not such Security or coupons be overdue, and none of the Company, the Trustees or any agent of the Company or the Trustees shall be affected by notice to the contrary.

The Depositary for Securities may be treated by the Company, the Trustees, and any agent of the Company or the Trustees as the owner of such global Security for all purposes whatsoever. None of the Company, the Trustees, any Paying Agent or the Security Registrar will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the records relating to or payments made on account of beneficial ownership interests of a Security in global form or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records relating to such beneficial ownership interests.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, with respect to any global Security, nothing herein shall prevent the Company, the Trustees, or any agent of the Company or the Trustees, from giving effect to any written certification, proxy or other authorization furnished by any Depositary, as a Holder, with respect to such global Security or impair, as between such Depositary and owners of beneficial interests in such global Security, the operation of customary practices governing the exercise of the rights of such Depositary (or its nominee) as Holder of such global Security.

### **SECTION 3.10 Cancellation .**

All Securities and coupons surrendered for payment, redemption, repayment at the option of the Holder, registration of transfer or exchange or for credit against any current or future sinking fund payment shall, if surrendered to any Person other than a Trustee, be delivered to either Trustee. All Securities and coupons so delivered to either Trustee shall be promptly cancelled by such Trustee. The Company may at any time deliver to a Trustee for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated and delivered hereunder which the Company may have acquired in any manner whatsoever, and may deliver to either Trustee (or to any other Person for delivery to such Trustee) for cancellation any Securities previously authenticated hereunder which the Company has not issued and sold, and all Securities so delivered shall be promptly cancelled by such Trustee. If the Company shall so acquire any of the Securities, however, such acquisition shall not operate as a redemption or satisfaction of the indebtedness represented by such Securities unless and until the same are surrendered to either Trustee for cancellation. No Securities shall be authenticated in lieu of or in exchange for any Securities cancelled as provided in this Section 3.10, except as expressly permitted by this Indenture. All cancelled Securities held by either Trustee shall be disposed of by such Trustee in accordance with its customary procedures and certification of their disposal delivered to the Company unless by Company Order the Company shall direct that cancelled Securities be returned to it.

### **SECTION 3.11 Computation of Interest .**

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01 with respect to any Securities, interest (if any) on the Securities of each series shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months. For the purposes of disclosure under the Interest Act (Canada), the yearly rate of interest to which interest calculated under a Security for any period in any calendar year (the “ **calculation period** ”) is equivalent, is the rate payable under a Security in respect of the calculation period multiplied by a fraction the numerator of which is the actual number of days in such calendar year and the denominator of which is the actual number of days in the calculation period.

### **SECTION 3.12 Currency and Manner of Payments in Respect of Securities .**

(a) With respect to Registered Securities of any series not permitting the election provided for in paragraph (b) below or the Holders of which have not made the election provided for in paragraph (b) below, and with respect to Bearer Securities of any series, except as provided in paragraph (d) below, payment of the principal of, premium (if any) and interest (if any) on such Registered Security or Bearer Security of such series will be made in the Currency in which such Registered Security or Bearer Security, as the case may be, is payable. The provisions of this Section 3.12 may be modified or superseded with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 3.01.

(b) It may be provided pursuant to Section 3.01 with respect to Registered Securities of any series that Holders shall have the option, subject to paragraphs (d) and (e) below, to receive payments of principal of, premium (if any) or interest (if any) on such Registered Securities in any of the Currencies which may be designated for such election by delivering to the Trustees a written election with signature guarantees and in the applicable form established pursuant to Section 3.01, not later than the close of business on the Election Date immediately preceding the applicable payment date. If a Holder so elects to receive such payments in any such Currency, such election will remain in effect for such Holder or any transferee of such Holder until changed by such Holder or such transferee by written notice to the Trustees (but any such change must be made not later than the close of business on the Election Date immediately preceding the next payment date to be effective for the payment to be made on such payment date and no such change of election may be made with respect to payments to be made on any Registered Security of such series with respect to which an Event of Default has occurred or with respect to which the Company has deposited funds pursuant to Article Four or Fourteen or with respect to which a notice of redemption has been given by the Company or a notice of option to elect repayment has been sent by such Holder or such transferee). Any Holder of any such Registered Security who shall not have delivered any such election to the Trustees not later than the close of business on the applicable Election Date will be paid the amount due on the applicable payment date in the relevant Currency as provided in Section 3.12(a) . The Trustees shall notify the Exchange Rate Agent as soon as practicable after the Election Date of the aggregate principal amount of Registered Securities for which Holders have made such written election.

(c) Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01, if the election referred to in paragraph (b) above has been provided for pursuant to Section 3.01, then, unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01, not later than the fourth Business Day after the Election Date for each payment date for Registered Securities of any series, the Exchange Rate Agent will deliver to the Company a written notice specifying, in the Currency in which Registered Securities of such series are payable, the respective aggregate amounts of principal of, premium (if any) and interest (if any) on the Registered Securities to be paid on such payment date, specifying the amounts in such Currency so payable in respect of the Registered Securities as to which the Holders of Registered Securities of such series shall have elected to be paid in another Currency as provided in paragraph (b) above. If the election referred to in paragraph (b) above has been provided for pursuant to Section 3.01 and if at least one Holder has made such election, then, unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01, on the second Business Day preceding such payment date the Company will deliver to the Trustees for such series of Registered Securities an Exchange Rate Officer's Certificate in respect of the Dollar or Foreign Currency payments to be made on such payment date. Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01, the Dollar or Foreign Currency amount receivable by Holders of Registered Securities who have elected payment in a Currency as provided in paragraph (b) above shall be determined by the Company on the basis of the applicable Market Exchange Rate in effect on the third Business Day (the "**Valuation Date**") immediately preceding each payment date, and such determination shall be conclusive and binding for all purposes, absent manifest error.

(d) If a Conversion Event occurs with respect to a Foreign Currency in which any of the Securities are denominated or payable other than pursuant to an election provided for pursuant to paragraph (b) above, then, with respect to each date for the payment of principal of, premium (if any) and interest (if any) on the applicable Securities denominated or payable in such Foreign Currency occurring after the last date on which such Foreign Currency was used (the "**Conversion Date**"), the Dollar shall be the Currency of payment for use on each such payment date. Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01, the Dollar amount to be paid by the Company to the Trustees and by the Trustees or any Paying Agent to the Holders of such Securities with respect to such payment date shall be, in the case of a Foreign Currency other than a currency unit, the Dollar Equivalent of the Foreign Currency or, in the case of a currency unit, the Dollar Equivalent of the Currency Unit, in each case as determined by the Exchange Rate Agent in the manner provided in paragraph (f) or (g) below.

(e) Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01, if the Holder of a Registered Security denominated in any Currency shall have elected to be paid in another Currency as provided in paragraph (b) above, and a Conversion Event occurs with respect to such elected Currency, such Holder shall receive payment in the Currency in which payment would have been made in the absence of such election; and if a Conversion Event occurs with respect to the Currency in which payment would have been made in the absence of such election, such Holder shall receive payment in Dollars as provided in paragraph (d) above.

(f) The “ **Dollar Equivalent of the Foreign Currency** ” shall be determined by the Exchange Rate Agent and shall be obtained for each subsequent payment date by converting the specified Foreign Currency into Dollars at the Market Exchange Rate on the Conversion Date.

(g) The “ **Dollar Equivalent of the Currency Unit** ” shall be determined by the Exchange Rate Agent and subject to the provisions of paragraph (h) below shall be the sum of each amount obtained by converting the Specified Amount of each Component Currency into Dollars at the Market Exchange Rate for such Component Currency on the Valuation Date with respect to each payment.

(h) For purposes of this Section 3.12 the following terms shall have the following meanings:

A “ **Component Currency** ” shall mean any Currency which, on the Conversion Date, was a component currency of the relevant currency unit, including, but not limited to, the Euro.

A “ **Specified Amount** ” of a Component Currency shall mean the number of units of such Component Currency or fractions thereof which were represented in the relevant currency unit, including, but not limited to, the Euro, on the Conversion Date. If after the Conversion Date the official unit of any Component Currency is altered by way of combination or subdivision, the Specified Amount of such Component Currency shall be divided or multiplied in the same proportion. If after the Conversion Date two or more Component Currencies are consolidated into a single currency, the respective Specified Amounts of such Component Currencies shall be replaced by an amount in such single Currency equal to the sum of the respective Specified Amounts of such consolidated Component Currencies expressed in such single Currency, and such amount shall thereafter be a Specified Amount and such single Currency shall thereafter be a Component Currency. If after the Conversion Date any Component Currency shall be divided into two or more currencies, the Specified Amount of such Component Currency shall be replaced by amounts of such two or more currencies, having an aggregate Dollar Equivalent value at the Market Exchange Rate on the date of such replacement equal to the Dollar Equivalent value of the Specified Amount of such former Component Currency at the Market Exchange Rate immediately before such division and such amounts shall thereafter be Specified Amounts and such currencies shall thereafter be Component Currencies. If, after the Conversion Date of the relevant currency unit, including, but not limited to, the Euro, a Conversion Event (other than any event referred to above in this definition of “ **Specified Amount** ”) occurs with respect to any Component Currency of such currency unit and is continuing on the applicable Valuation Date, the Specified Amount of such Component Currency shall, for purposes of calculating the Dollar Equivalent of the Currency Unit, be converted into Dollars at the Market Exchange Rate in effect on the Conversion Date of such Component Currency.

“ **Election Date** ” shall mean the date for any series of Registered Securities as specified pursuant to clause (15) of Section 3.01 by which the written election referred to in paragraph (b) above may be made.

All decisions and determinations of the Exchange Rate Agent regarding the Dollar Equivalent of the Foreign Currency, the Dollar Equivalent of the Currency Unit, the Market Exchange Rate and changes in the Specified Amounts as specified above shall be in its sole discretion and shall, in the absence of manifest error, be conclusive for all purposes and irrevocably binding upon the Company, the Trustees and all Holders of such Securities denominated or payable in the relevant Currency. The Exchange Rate Agent shall promptly give written notice to the Company and the Trustees of any such decision or determination.

In the event that the Company determines in good faith that a Conversion Event has occurred with respect to a Foreign Currency, the Company will immediately give written notice thereof to the Trustees and to the Exchange Rate Agent (and the Trustees will promptly thereafter give notice in the manner provided for in Section 1.07 to the affected Holders) specifying the Conversion Date. In the event the Company so determines that a Conversion Event has occurred with respect to the Euro or any other currency unit in which Securities are denominated or payable, the Company will immediately give written notice thereof to the Trustees and to the Exchange Rate Agent (and the Trustees will promptly thereafter give notice in the manner provided for in Section 1.07 to the affected Holders) specifying the Conversion Date and the Specified Amount of each Component Currency on the Conversion Date. In the event the Company determines in good faith that any subsequent change in any Component Currency as set forth in the definition of Specified Amount above has occurred, the Company will similarly give written notice to the Trustees and the Exchange Rate Agent.

The Trustees shall be fully justified and protected in relying and acting upon information received by it from the Company and the Exchange Rate Agent and shall not otherwise have any duty or obligation to determine the accuracy or validity of such information independent of the Company or the Exchange Rate Agent.

**SECTION 3.13 Appointment and Resignation of Successor Exchange Rate Agent .**

(a) Unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01, if and so long as the Securities of any series (i) are denominated in a Currency other than Dollars or (ii) may be payable in a Currency other than Dollars, or so long as it is required under any other provision of this Indenture, then the Company will maintain with respect to each such series of Securities, or as so required, at least one Exchange Rate Agent. The Company will cause the Exchange Rate Agent to make the necessary foreign exchange determinations at the time and in the manner specified pursuant to Section 3.01 for the purpose of determining the applicable rate of exchange and, if applicable, for the purpose of converting the issued Currency into the applicable payment Currency for the payment of principal, premium (if any) and interest (if any) pursuant to Section 3.12.

(b) The Company shall have the right to remove and replace from time to time the Exchange Rate Agent for any series of Securities. No resignation of the Exchange Rate Agent and no appointment of a successor Exchange Rate Agent pursuant to this Section 3.13 shall become effective until the acceptance of appointment by the successor Exchange Rate Agent as evidenced by a written instrument delivered to the Company and the Trustees.

(c) If the Exchange Rate Agent shall resign, be removed or become incapable of acting, or if a vacancy shall occur in the office of the Exchange Rate Agent for any cause with respect to the Securities of one or more series, the Company, by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, shall promptly appoint a successor Exchange Rate Agent or Exchange Rate Agents with respect to the Securities of that or those series (it being understood that any such successor Exchange Rate Agent may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more or all of such series and that, unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01, at any time there shall only be one Exchange Rate Agent with respect to the Securities of any particular series that are originally issued by the Company on the same date and that are initially denominated and/or payable in the same Currency).

**ARTICLE FOUR**  
**SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE**

**SECTION 4.01 Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture .**

This Indenture shall upon Company Request cease to be of further effect with respect to any series of Securities specified in such Company Request (except as to any surviving rights of registration of transfer or exchange of Securities of such series expressly provided for herein or pursuant hereto and the rights of Holders of such series of Securities and any related coupons to receive, solely from the trust fund described in subclause (b) of clause (1) of this Section 4.01, payments in respect of the principal of, premium (if any) and interest (if any) on such Securities and any related coupons when such payments are due and except as provided in the last paragraph of this Section 4.01) and the Trustees, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture as to such series when

(1) either

(a) all Securities of such series theretofore authenticated and delivered and all coupons, if any, appertaining thereto (other than (i) coupons appertaining to Bearer Securities surrendered for exchange for Registered Securities and maturing after such exchange, whose surrender is not required or has been waived as provided in Section 3.05, (ii) Securities and coupons of such series which have been destroyed, lost or stolen and which have been replaced or paid as provided in Section 3.06, (iii) coupons appertaining to Securities called for redemption and maturing after the relevant Redemption Date, whose surrender has been waived as provided in Section 11.06, and (iv) Securities and coupons of such series for whose payment money has theretofore been deposited in trust with either Trustee or any Paying Agent or segregated and held in trust by the Company and thereafter repaid to the Company, as provided in Section 10.03) have been delivered to either Trustee for cancellation; or

(b) all Securities of such series and, in the case of (i) or (ii) below, any coupons appertaining thereto not theretofore delivered to either Trustee for cancellation

(i) have become due and payable, or

(ii) will become due and payable at their Stated Maturity within one year, or

(iii) if redeemable at the option of the Company, are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustees for the giving of notice of redemption by the Trustees in the name, and at the expense, of the Company,

and the Company, in the case of (i), (ii) or (iii) above, has irrevocably deposited or caused to be deposited with either Trustee as trust funds in trust for such purpose an amount in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable, sufficient to pay and discharge the entire indebtedness on such Securities not theretofore delivered to such Trustee for cancellation, for principal, premium (if any) and interest (if any) to the date of such deposit (in the case of Securities which have become due and payable) or to the Stated Maturity or Redemption Date, as the case may be;

(2) the Company has paid or caused to be paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company; and

- (3) the Company has delivered to the Trustees an Officer's Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture as to such series have been complied with.

Notwithstanding the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture, the obligations of the Company to the Trustees under Section 6.07, the obligations of the Trustees to any Authenticating Agent under Section 6.12 and, if money shall have been deposited with the Trustees pursuant to subclause (b) of clause (1) of this Section 4.01, the obligations of the Trustees under Section 4.02 and the last paragraph of Section 10.03 shall survive.

#### **SECTION 4.02 Application of Trust Money .**

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 10.03, all money deposited with the Trustees pursuant to Section 4.01 shall be held in trust and applied by it, in accordance with the provisions of the Securities, the coupons and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent) as the Trustees may determine, to the Persons entitled thereto, of the principal, premium (if any) and interest (if any) for whose payment such money has been deposited with the Trustees; but such money need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

### **ARTICLE FIVE REMEDIES**

#### **SECTION 5.01 Events of Default .**

“**Event of Default**,” wherever used herein with respect to Securities of any series, means any one of the following events (whatever the reason for such Event of Default and whether it shall be voluntary or involuntary or be effected by operation of law or pursuant to any judgment, decree or order of any court or any order, rule or regulation of any administrative or governmental body), unless such event is specifically deleted or modified in or pursuant to a supplemental indenture, Board Resolution or Officer's Certificate establishing the terms of such series pursuant to Section 3.01 of this Indenture:

- (1) default in the payment of any interest due on any Security of that series, or any related coupon, when such interest or coupon becomes due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 30 days; or
- (2) default in the payment of the principal or premium (if any) in respect of any Security of that series at its Maturity; or
- (3) default in the deposit of any sinking fund, amortization or analogous payment when due by the terms of any Security of that series and Article Twelve; or
- (4) default in the performance, or breach, of any covenant or agreement of the Company in this Indenture which affects or is applicable to the Securities of that series (other than a covenant or agreement, a default in whose performance or whose breach is elsewhere in this Section 5.01 specifically dealt with), and continuance of such default or breach for a period of 60 days after there has been given (and 120 days with respect to a default or breach under Section 703), by registered or certified mail, to the Company by the Trustees or to the Company and the Trustees by the Holders of at least 25% in principal amount of all Outstanding Securities of that series a written notice specifying such default or breach and requiring it to be remedied and stating that such notice is a “Notice of Default” hereunder; or

- (5) the entry of a decree or order by a court having jurisdiction in the premises adjudging the Company bankrupt or insolvent, or approving as properly filed a petition seeking reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition of or in respect of the Company under or subject to the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act (Canada), the Companies' Creditors Arrangement Act (Canada), the U.S. Federal Bankruptcy Code or any other federal, provincial, state or foreign bankruptcy, insolvency or analogous laws, or the issuance of a sequestration order or the (appointment of a receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or other similar official) of the Company or in receipt of any substantial part of the property of the Company, and any such decree, order or appointment continues unstayed and in effect for a period of 90 consecutive days; or
- (6) the institution by the Company of proceedings to be adjudicated bankrupt or insolvent, or the consent by it to the institution of bankruptcy or insolvency proceedings against it, or the filing by it of a petition or answer or consent seeking reorganization or relief under or subject to the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act (Canada), the Companies' Creditors Arrangement Act (Canada), the U.S. Federal Bankruptcy Code or any other federal, provincial, state or foreign bankruptcy, insolvency or analogous laws or the consent by it to the filing of any such petition or to the appointment of a receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator (or other similar official) of the Company or of any substantial part of its property, or the making by it of a general assignment for the benefit of creditors, or the admission by it in writing of its inability to pay its debts generally as they become due or the taking by it of corporate action in furtherance of any of the aforesaid purposes; or
- (7) any other Event of Default provided with respect to Securities of that series.

#### **SECTION 5.02 Acceleration of Maturity; Rescission and Annulment .**

If an Event of Default described in clause (1), (2), (3), (4) or (7) of Section 5.01 with respect to Securities of any series at the time Outstanding occurs and is continuing, then in every such case, either Trustee or the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series, may declare the principal amount (or, if the Securities of that series are Original Issue Discount Securities or Indexed Securities, such portion of the principal amount as may be specified in the terms of that series) of all of the Securities of that series and all interest thereon to be due and payable immediately, by a notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustees if given by Holders), and upon any such declaration such principal amount (or specified portion thereof) shall become immediately due and payable. If an Event of Default specified in clause (5) or (6) of Section 5.01 occurs and is continuing, then the principal amount of all the Securities shall ipso facto become and be immediately due and payable without any declaration or other act on the part of the Trustees or any Holder.

At any time after such a declaration of acceleration with respect to Securities of any series (or of all series, as the case may be) has been made and before a judgment or decree for payment of the money due has been obtained by either Trustee as hereinafter provided in this Article Five, the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series (or of all series, as the case may be), by written notice to the Company and the Trustees, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if:

- (1) the Company has paid or deposited with either Trustee a sum sufficient to pay in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Sections 3.12(b), 3.12(d) and 3.12(e)),

- (a) all overdue interest (if any) on all Outstanding Securities of that series (or of all series, as the case may be) and any related coupons,
  - (b) all unpaid principal of and premium (if any) on any Outstanding Securities of that series (or of all series, as the case may be) which has become due otherwise than by such declaration of acceleration, and interest on such unpaid principal and premium (if any) at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities,
  - (c) to the extent that payment of such interest is legally enforceable, interest on overdue interest at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities, and
  - (d) all sums paid or advanced by the Trustees hereunder and the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustees, their agents and counsel; and
- (2) all Events of Default with respect to Securities of that series (or of all series, as the case may be), other than the non-payment of amounts of principal of, premium (if any) or interest (if any) on Securities of that series (or of all series, as the case may be) which have become due solely by such declaration of acceleration, have been cured or waived as provided in Section 5.13.

No such rescission shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.

**SECTION 5.03 Collection of Debt and Suits for Enforcement by Trustees .**

The Company covenants that if

- (1) default is made in the payment of any installment of interest on any Security and any related coupon when such interest becomes due and payable and such default continues for a period of 30 days, or
- (2) default is made in the payment of the principal of or premium (if any) any Security at the Maturity thereof,

then the Company will, upon demand of the Trustees, pay to the applicable Trustee for the benefit of the Holders of such Securities and coupons, the whole amount then due and payable on such Securities and coupons for principal of, premium (if any) and interest (if any) and interest on any overdue principal, overdue premium (if any) and, to the extent lawful, overdue interest (if any), at the rate or rates prescribed therefor in such Securities, and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, including the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of the Trustees, their agents and counsel.

If the Company fails to pay such amounts forthwith upon such demand, the Trustees, in their own names as trustees of an express trust, may institute a judicial proceeding for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, may prosecute such proceeding to judgment or final decree and may enforce the same against the Company or any other obligor upon such Securities and collect the moneys adjudged or decreed to be payable in the manner provided by law out of the property of the Company or any other obligor upon such Securities, wherever situated.

If an Event of Default with respect to Securities of any series (or of all series, as the case may be) occurs and is continuing, either Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce its rights and the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series (or of all series, as the case may be) by such appropriate judicial proceedings as such Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any such rights, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted herein, or to enforce any other proper remedy.

**SECTION 5.04 Trustees May File Proofs of Claim .**

In case of the pendency of any receivership, insolvency, liquidation, bankruptcy, reorganization, arrangement, adjustment, composition or other judicial proceeding relative to the Company or any other obligor upon the Securities or the property of the Company or of such other obligor or their creditors, each Trustee (irrespective of whether the principal of the Securities shall then be due and payable as therein expressed or by declaration or otherwise and irrespective of whether either Trustee shall have made any demand on the Company for the payment of overdue principal, premium (if any) or interest) shall be entitled and empowered, by intervention in such proceeding or otherwise,

- (i) to file and prove a claim for the whole amount of principal and premium (if any), or such portion of the principal amount of any series of Original Issue Discount Securities or Indexed Securities as may be specified in the terms of such series, and interest (if any) owing and unpaid in respect of the Securities and to file such other papers or documents as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of such Trustee (including any claim for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of such Trustee, its agents and counsel) and of the Holders allowed in such judicial proceeding, and
- (ii) to collect and receive any moneys or other property payable or deliverable on any such claims and to distribute the same;

and any custodian, receiver, assignee, trustee, liquidator, sequestrator or other similar official in any such judicial proceeding is hereby authorized by each Holder to make such payments to such Trustee and, in the event that such Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to the Holders, to pay to such Trustee any amount due to it for the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of each Trustee, its agents and counsel, and any other amounts due to such Trustee under Section 6.07.

Nothing herein contained shall be deemed to authorize the Trustees to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Holder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities or the rights of any Holder thereof or to authorize the Trustees to vote in respect of the claim of any Holder in any such proceeding.

**SECTION 5.05 Trustees May Enforce Claims Without Possession of Securities .**

All rights of action and claims under this Indenture, the Securities or coupons may be prosecuted and enforced by the Trustees without the possession of any of the Securities or coupons or the production thereof in any proceeding relating thereto, and any such proceeding instituted by either Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for the payment of the reasonable compensation, expenses, disbursements and advances of such Trustee, its agents and counsel, be for the ratable benefit of the Holders of the Securities and coupons in respect of which such judgment has been recovered.

**SECTION 5.06 Application of Money Collected .**

Any money collected by either Trustee pursuant to this Article Five shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustees and, in case of the distribution of such money on account of principal of, premium (if any) or interest (if any) upon presentation of the Securities or coupons, or both, as the case may be, and the notation thereon of the payment if only partially paid and upon surrender thereof if fully paid:

First: to the payment of all amounts due the Trustees under Section 6.07;

Second: to the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid for principal of, premium (if any) and interest (if any), on the Securities and coupons in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the amounts due and payable on such Securities and coupons for principal, premium (if any) and interest (if any), respectively; and

Third: the balance, if any, to the Person or Persons entitled thereto.

**SECTION 5.07 Limitation on Suits .**

No Holder of any Security of any series or any related coupons shall have any right to institute any proceeding, judicial or otherwise, with respect to this Indenture or the Securities, or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless

- (1) such Holder has previously given written notice to the Trustees of a continuing Event of Default with respect to the Securities of that series;
- (2) the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series in the case of any Event of Default described in clause (1), (2), (3), (4) or (7) of Section 5.01, or, in the case of any Event of Default described in clause (5) or (6) of Section 5.01, the Holders of not less than 25% in principal amount of all Outstanding Securities, shall have made written request to the Trustees to institute proceedings in respect of such Event of Default in their own names as Trustees hereunder;
- (3) such Holder or Holders have offered to the Trustees reasonable indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred in compliance with such request;
- (4) the Trustees for 60 days after their receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity have failed to institute any such proceeding; and
- (5) no direction inconsistent with such written request has been given to the Trustees during such 60-day period by the Holders of a majority or more in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of that series in the case of any Event of Default described in clause (1), (2), (3), (4) or (7) of Section 5.01, or in the case of any Event of Default described in clause (5) or (6) of Section 5.01, by the Holders of a majority or more in principal amount of all Outstanding Securities;

it being understood and intended that no one or more of such Holders shall have any right in any manner whatever by virtue of, or by availing of, any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of any other Holders of Securities of the same series, in the case of any Event of Default described in clause (1), (2), (3), (4) or (7) of Section 5.01, or of Holders of all Securities in the case of any Event of Default described in clause (5) or (6) of Section 5.01, or to obtain or to seek to obtain priority or preference over any other of such Holders or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal and ratable benefit of all Holders of Securities of the same series, in the case of any Event of Default described in clause (1), (2), (3), (4) or (7) of Section 5.01, or of Holders of all Securities in the case of any Event of Default described in clause (5) or (6) of Section 5.01.

**SECTION 5.08 Unconditional Right of Holders to Receive Principal, Premium and Interest .**

Notwithstanding any other provision in this Indenture, the Holder of any Security shall have the right, which is absolute and unconditional, to receive payment, as provided herein (including, if applicable, Article Fourteen) and in such Security, of the principal of and premium (if any) and (subject to Section 3.07) interest (if any) on, such Security or payment of such coupon on the respective Stated Maturities expressed in such Security or coupon (or, in the case of redemption, on the Redemption Date or, in the case of repayment at the option of the Holder as contemplated by Article Twelve, on the Repayment Date) and subject to the limitations on a Holder's ability to institute suit contained Section 5.07, to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment, and such rights shall not be impaired without the consent of such Holder.

**SECTION 5.09 Restoration of Rights and Remedies .**

If either Trustee or any Holder has instituted any proceeding to enforce any right or remedy under this Indenture and such proceeding has been discontinued or abandoned for any reason, or has been determined adversely to such Trustee or to such Holder, then and in every such case, subject to any determination in such proceeding, the Company, the Trustees and the Holders of Securities and coupons shall be restored severally and respectively to their former positions hereunder and thereafter all rights and remedies of the Trustees and the Holders shall continue as though no such proceeding had been instituted.

**SECTION 5.10 Rights and Remedies Cumulative .**

Except as otherwise provided with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities or coupons in the last paragraph of Section 3.06, no right or remedy herein conferred upon or reserved to the Trustees or to the Holders of Securities or coupons is intended to be exclusive of any other right or remedy, and every right and remedy shall, to the extent permitted by law, be cumulative and in addition to every other right and remedy given hereunder or now or hereafter existing at law or in equity or otherwise. The assertion or employment of any right or remedy hereunder, or otherwise, shall not, to the extent permitted by law, prevent the concurrent assertion or employment of any other appropriate right or remedy.

**SECTION 5.11 Delay or Omission Not Waiver .**

No delay or omission of the Trustees or of any Holder of any Security or coupon to exercise any right or remedy accruing upon any Event of Default shall impair any such right or remedy or constitute a waiver of any such Event of Default or an acquiescence therein. Every right and remedy given by this Article Five or by law to the Trustees or to the Holders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as may be deemed expedient, by the Trustees or by the Holders, as the case may be.

**SECTION 5.12 Control by Holders .**

With respect to the Securities of any series, the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustees, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustees, relating to or arising under clause (1), (2), (3), (4) or (7) of Section 5.01, and, with respect to all Securities, the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of all Outstanding Securities shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustees, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustees, not relating to or arising under clause (1), (2), (3), (4) or (7) of Section 5.01, *provided* that in each case

- (1) such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture,
- (2) the Trustees may take any other action deemed proper by the Trustees which is not inconsistent with such direction, and
- (3) the Trustees need not take any action which might involve them in personal liability or be unjustly prejudicial to the Holders of Securities of such series not consenting.

#### **SECTION 5.13 Waiver of Past Defaults .**

Subject to Section 5.02, the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series may on behalf of the Holders of all the Securities of such series waive any past Default described in clause (1), (2), (3), (4) or (7) of Section 5.01 (or, in the case of a Default described in clause (5) or (6) of Section 5.01, the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of all Outstanding Securities may waive any such past Default), and its consequences, except a default

- (1) in respect of the payment of the principal of, premium (if any) or interest (if any) on any Security or any related coupon, or
- (2) in respect of a covenant or provision herein which under Article Nine cannot be modified or amended without the consent of the Holder of each outstanding Security of such series affected.

Upon any such waiver, any such Default shall cease to exist, and any Event of Default arising therefrom shall be deemed to have been cured, for every purpose of this Indenture; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other Default or Event of Default or impair any right consequent thereon.

#### **SECTION 5.14 Waiver of Stay or Extension Laws .**

The Company covenants (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) that it will not at any time insist upon, or plead, or in any manner whatsoever claim or take the benefit or advantage of, any stay or extension law wherever enacted, now or at any time hereafter in force, which may affect the covenants or the performance of this Indenture; and the Company (to the extent that it may lawfully do so) hereby expressly waives all benefit or advantage of any such law and covenants that it will not hinder, delay or impede the execution of any power herein granted to the Trustees, but will suffer and permit the execution of every such power as though no such law had been enacted.

#### **SECTION 5.15 Undertaking for Costs .**

In any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against either Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted by it as Trustee, a court may require any party litigant in such suit to file an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and may assess costs against any such party litigant, in the manner and to the extent provided in Trust Indenture Legislation; *provided, however*, that neither this Section 5.15 nor the provisions of TIA Section 315(e) shall apply to any suit instituted by either Trustee or by any Holder or group of Holders holding more than 10% in principal amount of all Outstanding Securities or by any Holder of any Security on any suit for the enforcement of the right to receive the principal of and interest on any such Securities.

**ARTICLE SIX  
THE TRUSTEES**

**SECTION 6.01 Notice of Defaults .**

Each Trustee shall promptly give the other Trustee notice of any Default or Event of Default known to it. Within a reasonable time, but no more than 30 days after either Trustee has knowledge of any Default hereunder with respect to the Securities of any series, one or both of the Trustees shall transmit in the manner and to the extent provided in Trust Indenture Legislation, including TIA Section 313(c), notice to the Holders of such Default hereunder known to either Trustee, unless such Default shall have been cured or waived (and, in the case where such Default shall have been cured, the Trustees shall notify the Holders in writing of such cure in writing within a reasonable time, but not exceeding 30 days, after the Trustees have become aware that the Default has been cured); *provided, however*, that, except in the case of a Default in the payment of the principal of, premium (if any) or interest (if any) on any Security of such series or in the payment of any sinking fund installment with respect to Securities of such series, the Trustees shall be protected in withholding such notice if and so long as the board of directors, the executive committee or a trust committee of directors and/or Responsible Officers of each Trustee in good faith determine that the withholding of such notice is in the interest of the Holders of Securities of such series and any related coupons; *provided further* that in the case of any Default of the character specified in clause (4) of Section 5.01 with respect to Securities of such series, no such notice to Holders shall be given until at least 30 days after the occurrence thereof.

**SECTION 6.02 Certain Duties and Responsibilities of Trustees .**

(a) The Trustees, prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default and after the curing of all Events of Default that may have occurred, shall undertake to perform with respect to the Securities of any series such duties and only such duties as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustees.

(b) In all instances, in the exercise of the powers, rights, duties and discharge of obligations prescribed or conferred by the terms of this Indenture, each Trustee shall act honestly and in good faith with a view to the best interests of the Holders and exercise that degree of care, diligence and skill that a reasonably prudent trustee in respect of indentures for the purpose of issuing corporate debt obligations would exercise in comparable circumstances.

(c) No provision of this Indenture shall be construed to relieve each Trustee from liability for its own actions or failure to act in accordance with Subsection 6.02(b), except that:

- (i) prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default and after the curing or waiving of all such Events of Default that may have occurred:
  - (A) the duties and obligations of each Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall be determined solely by the express provisions of this Indenture, and the Trustees shall not be liable except for the performance of such duties and obligations as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustees; and

- (B) in the absence of bad faith on the part of either Trustee, such Trustee may conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon any certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustees and conforming to the requirements of this Indenture and Trust Indenture Legislation; but in the case of any such certificates or opinions that by any provision hereof are specifically required to be furnished to the Trustees, the Trustees shall be under a duty to examine the same to determine whether or not they conform to the requirements of this Indenture; *provided, however*, the Canadian Trustee shall not be required to determine whether the certificates or opinions presented to it conform to the Trust Indenture Act and the U.S. Trustee shall not be required to determine whether the certificates or opinions presented to it conform to Canadian Trust Indenture Legislation.
- (ii) the Trustees shall not be liable with respect to any action taken or omitted to be taken by them in good faith in accordance with the direction of the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding relating to the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustees, or exercising any trust or power conferred upon the Trustees under this Indenture;
- (iii) none of the provisions contained in this Indenture shall require either Trustee to expend or risk their own funds or otherwise incur personal or any financial liability in the performance of any of their duties or in the exercise of any of their rights or powers; and
- (iv) whether or not therein expressly so provided, except to the extent expressly provided herein to the contrary, every provision of this Indenture relating to the conduct or effecting the liability or affording protection to the Trustees shall be subject to the provisions of this Section 6.02.

(d) Notwithstanding the provisions of this Section 6.02 or any provision in this Indenture or in the Securities, the Trustees will not be charged with knowledge of the existence of any Event of Default or any other fact that would prohibit the making of any payment of monies to or by the Trustees, or the taking of any other action by the Trustees, unless and until the Trustees have received written notice thereof from the Company or any Holder.

#### **SECTION 6.03 Certain Rights of Trustees .**

Subject to the provisions of TIA Sections 315(a) through 315(d):

- (1) the Trustees may rely and shall be protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, other evidence of indebtedness or other paper or document believed by them to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties;

- (2) any request or direction of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Company Request or Company Order and any resolution of the Board of Directors may be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution;
- (3) whenever in the administration of this Indenture the Trustees shall deem it desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking, suffering or omitting any action hereunder, each Trustee (unless other evidence be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of bad faith on its part, rely upon an Officer's Certificate;
- (4) the Trustees may consult with counsel and the written advice of such counsel or any opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken, suffered or omitted by them hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon;
- (5) the Trustees shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request or direction of any of the Holders of Securities of any series or any related coupons pursuant to this Indenture, unless such Holders shall have offered to the Trustees reasonable security or indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities which might be incurred by them in compliance with such request or direction;
- (6) the Trustees shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, direction, consent, order, bond, debenture, note, other evidence of indebtedness or other paper or document, but the Trustees, in their discretion, may make such further inquiry or investigation into such facts or matters as they may see fit, and, if the Trustees shall determine to make such further inquiry or investigation, they shall be entitled to examine the books, records and premises of the Company, personally or by agent or attorney;
- (7) in an Event of Default, the Trustees' powers shall not be infringed upon so long as they act in accordance with Section 6.02(b);
- (8) the Trustees may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustees shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by them hereunder; and
- (9) the Trustees shall not be liable for any action taken, suffered or omitted by them in good faith and believed by them to be authorized or within the discretion or rights or powers conferred upon them by this Indenture, so long as they act in accordance with this Section 6.02(b).

#### **SECTION 6.04 Trustees Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities .**

The recitals contained herein and in the Securities, except for a Trustee's certificate of authentication, and in any coupons shall be taken as the statements of the Company, and neither Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent assumes any responsibility for their correctness. The Trustees make no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities or coupons, except that the Trustees represent that they are duly authorized to execute and deliver this Indenture, authenticate the Securities and perform their obligations hereunder and that the statements made by the U.S. Trustee in a Statement of Eligibility on Form T-1 supplied to the Company are true and accurate, subject to the qualifications set forth therein. Neither Trustee nor any Authenticating Agent shall be accountable for the use or application by the Company of Securities or the proceeds thereof. Nothing herein contained will impose on either Trustee any obligation to see to, or to require evidence of, the registration or filing (or renewal thereof) of this Indenture or any supplemental indenture. The Trustees shall not be bound to give notice to any person of the execution hereof.

**SECTION 6.05 May Hold Securities .**

The Trustees, any Authenticating Agent, any Paying Agent, any Security Registrar or any other agent of the Company or of the Trustees, in their individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities and coupons and, subject to TIA Sections 310(b) and 311, may otherwise deal with the Company, including, without limitation, as a creditor of the Company, with the same rights they would have if they were not Trustees, Authenticating Agent, Paying Agent, Security Registrar or such other agent. A Trustee that has resigned or is removed shall remain subject to TIA Section 311(a) to the extent provided therein.

**SECTION 6.06 Money Held in Trust .**

Money held by the Trustees in trust hereunder need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Trustees shall be under no liability for interest on any money received by them hereunder except as otherwise agreed with the Company.

**SECTION 6.07 Compensation and Reimbursement .**

The Company agrees:

- (1) to pay to the Trustees from time to time reasonable compensation for all services rendered by them hereunder (which compensation shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust);
- (2) except as otherwise expressly provided herein, to reimburse the Trustees upon their request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by the Trustees in accordance with any provision of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of their agents and counsel), except any such expense, disbursement or advance as may be attributable to the U.S. Trustee's gross negligence or bad faith or the Canadian Trustee's gross negligence or willful misconduct, respectively; and
- (3) to indemnify the Trustees for, and to hold them and their directors, officers, agents, representatives, successors, assigns and employees harmless against, any loss, liability or expense incurred without gross negligence or bad faith on the part of the U.S. Trustee, or gross negligence or willful misconduct on the part of the Canadian Trustee, respectively, arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of the trust or trusts hereunder, including reasonable attorneys' fees and other reasonable costs and expenses of defending themselves against any claim or liability in connection with the exercise or performance of any of their powers or duties hereunder.

The obligations of the Company under this Section 6.07 to compensate the Trustees, to pay or reimburse the Trustees for expenses, disbursements and advances and to indemnify and hold harmless the Trustees shall constitute additional indebtedness hereunder and shall survive the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture and the resignation or removal of the Trustee. As security for the performance of such obligations of the Company, the Trustees shall have a claim prior to the Securities upon all property and funds held or collected by the Trustees as such, except funds held in trust for the payment of principal of, premium (if any) or interest (if any) on particular Securities or any coupons.

When the Trustees incur expenses or render services in connection with an Event of Default specified in clause (5) or (6) of Section 5.01, the expenses (including reasonable charges and expense of its counsel) of and the compensation for such services are intended to constitute expenses of administration under any applicable United States or Canadian federal, state or provincial bankruptcy, insolvency or other similar law.

The provisions of this Section 6.07 shall survive the termination of this Indenture.

**SECTION 6.08 Corporate Trustees Required; Eligibility .**

- (1) There shall be at all times a U.S. Trustee hereunder which shall be eligible to act as Trustee under TIA Section 310(a)(1) and, together with its immediate parent, shall have a combined capital and surplus of at least \$50,000,000. If the U.S. Trustee publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of United States federal, state, territorial or District of Columbia supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section 6.08, the combined capital and surplus of U.S. Trustee shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. If at any time the U.S. Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section 6.08, it shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect hereinafter specified in this Article Six.
- (2) For so long as required by Trust Indenture Legislation, there shall be a Canadian Trustee under this Indenture. The Canadian Trustee shall at all times be a resident or authorized to do business in the Province of Ontario and any other province in Canada where Holders may be resident from time to time. The Canadian Trustee represents and warrants that no material conflict of interest exists in the Canadian Trustee's role as a fiduciary hereunder and agrees that in the event of a material conflict of interest arising hereafter it will, within 30 days after ascertaining that it has such material conflict of interest, either eliminate the same or resign its trust hereunder. If any such material conflict of interests exists or hereafter shall exist, the validity and enforceability of this Indenture shall not be affected in any manner whatsoever by reason thereof.
- (3) The Trustees will not be required to give any bond or security in respect of the execution of the trusts and powers set out in this Indenture or otherwise in respect of the premises.
- (4) Neither Trustee nor any Affiliate of either Trustee shall be appointed a receiver or receiver and manager or liquidator of all or any part of the assets or undertaking of the Company.

**SECTION 6.09 Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor .**

- (1) No resignation or removal of either Trustee and no appointment of a successor Trustee pursuant to this Article Six shall become effective until the acceptance of appointment by the successor Trustee in accordance with the applicable requirements of Section 6.10.
- (2) Either Trustee may resign at any time with respect to the Securities of one or more series by giving written notice thereof to the Company. If the instrument of acceptance by a successor Trustee required by Section 6.10 shall not have been delivered to such Trustee within 30 days after the giving of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series.

- (3) Either Trustee may be removed following 30 days notice at any time with respect to the Securities of any series by Act of the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series, delivered to such Trustee and to the Company.
- (4) If at any time:
- (i) either Trustee shall acquire any conflicting interest as defined in TIA Section 310(b) and fail to comply with the provisions of TIA Section 310(b)(i), or
  - (ii) either Trustee shall fail to comply with the provisions of TIA Section 310(b) after written request therefor by the Company or by any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months, or
  - (iii) either Trustee shall cease to be eligible under Section 6.08 and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or by any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security for at least six months, or
  - (iv) either Trustee shall become incapable of acting or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent or a receiver of such Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or any public officer shall take charge or control of such Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation,

then, in any such case, (i) the Company, by a Board Resolution, may remove such Trustee with respect to all Securities, or (ii) subject to TIA Section 315(e), any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of such series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of such Trustee with respect to all Securities of such series and the appointment of a successor Trustee or Trustees.

- (5) If either Trustee shall resign, be removed or become incapable of acting, or if a vacancy shall occur in the office of the U.S. Trustee or the Canadian Trustee for any cause, with respect to the Securities of one or more series, the Company, by a Board Resolution, shall promptly appoint a successor Trustee or Trustees with respect to the Securities of that or those series (it being understood that any such successor Trustee may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more or all of such series) *provided, however*, that the Company shall not be required to appoint a successor Trustee to the Canadian Trustee if the Canadian Trustee resigns or is removed and a Canadian Trustee under this Indenture is no longer required under Trust Indenture Legislation. If, within one year after such resignation, removal or incapability, or the occurrence of such vacancy, a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall be appointed by Act of the Holders of a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series delivered to the Company and the retiring Trustee, the successor Trustee so appointed shall, forthwith upon its acceptance of such appointment, become the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series and to that extent supersede the successor Trustee appointed by the Company. If no successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series shall have been so appointed by the Company or the Holders and accepted appointment in the manner hereinafter provided, any Holder who has been a bona fide Holder of a Security of such series for at least six months may, on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series.

- (6) The Company shall give notice of each resignation and each removal of a Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series and each appointment of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of any series to the Holders of Securities of such series in the manner provided for in Section 1.07. Each notice shall include the name of the successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of such series and the address of its Corporate Trust Office.
- (7) If a Canadian Trustee under this Indenture is no longer required by Trust Indenture Legislation, then the Company by a Board Resolution may remove the Canadian Trustee.

#### **SECTION 6.10 Acceptance of Appointment by Successor .**

- (1) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to all Securities, every such successor Trustee so appointed shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and to the retiring Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective and such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee; but, on the request of the Company or the successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee shall, upon payment of its charges, execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor Trustee all the rights, powers and trusts of the retiring Trustee and shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder.
- (2) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Company, the retiring Trustee and each successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto wherein each successor Trustee shall accept such appointment and which (1) shall contain such provisions as shall be necessary or desirable to transfer and confirm to, and to vest in, each successor Trustee all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates, (2) if the retiring Trustee is not retiring with respect to all Securities, shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series as to which the retiring Trustee is not retiring shall continue to be vested in the retiring Trustee, and (3) shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such supplemental indenture shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust and that each such Trustee shall be trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee; and upon the execution and delivery of such supplemental indenture the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective to the extent provided therein and each such successor Trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates; but, on request of the Company or any successor Trustee, such retiring Trustee shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor Trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor Trustee relates. Whenever there is a successor Trustee with respect to one or more (but less than all) series of Securities issued pursuant to this Indenture, the terms "Indenture" and "Securities" shall have the meanings specified in the provisos to the respective definitions of those terms in Section 1.01 which contemplate such situation.

- (3) Upon reasonable request of any such successor Trustee, the Company shall execute any and all instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor Trustee all rights, powers and trusts referred to in paragraph (1) or (2) of this Section 6.10, as the case may be.
- (4) No successor Trustee shall accept its appointment unless at the time of such acceptance such successor Trustee shall be qualified and eligible under this Article Six.

#### **SECTION 6.11 Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business .**

Any corporation into which either Trustee or its corporate trust business may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which either Trustee shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to all or substantially all the corporate trust business of either Trustee, shall be the successor of such Trustee hereunder, *provided* such corporation shall be otherwise qualified and eligible under this Article Six, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto. In case any Securities shall have been authenticated, but not delivered, by a Trustee then in office, any successor by merger, conversion or consolidation to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities. In case any of the Securities shall not have been authenticated by such predecessor Trustee, any successor Trustee may authenticate such Securities either in the name of any predecessor hereunder or in the name of the successor Trustee. In all such cases such certificates shall have the full force and effect which this Indenture provides for the certificate of authentication of such Trustee; *provided, however*, that the right to adopt the certificate of authentication of any predecessor Trustee or to authenticate Securities in the name of any predecessor Trustee shall apply only to its successor or successors by merger, conversion or consolidation.

#### **SECTION 6.12 Appointment of Authenticating Agent .**

At any time when any of the Securities remain outstanding, the Trustees may appoint an Authenticating Agent or Agents, with respect to one or more series of Securities which shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustees to authenticate Securities of such series and the Trustees shall give written notice of such appointment to all Holders of Securities of the series with respect to which such Authenticating Agent will serve, in the manner provided for in Section 1.07. Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes as if authenticated by the applicable Trustee hereunder. Any such appointment shall be evidenced by an instrument in writing signed by a Responsible Officer of the Trustees, and a copy of such instrument shall be promptly furnished to the Company. Wherever reference is made in this Indenture to the authentication and delivery of Securities by the Trustees or either Trustee's certificate of authentication, such reference shall be deemed to include authentication and delivery on behalf of the Trustees by an Authenticating Agent and a certificate of authentication executed on behalf of the Trustees by an Authenticating Agent. Each Authenticating Agent shall be acceptable to the Company and shall at all times be a corporation organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America, any state thereof or the District of Columbia or the laws of Canada or any province thereof, authorized under such laws to act as Authenticating Agent, having a combined capital and surplus of not less than \$50,000,000 and subject to supervision or examination by United States federal or state or Canadian federal or provincial authority. If such corporation publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of said supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section 6.12, the combined capital and surplus of such corporation shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. If at any time an Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section 6.12, it shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in this Section 6.12.

Any corporation into which an Authenticating Agent may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any corporation resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which such Authenticating Agent shall be a party, or any corporation succeeding to the corporate agency or corporate trust business of an Authenticating Agent, shall continue to be an Authenticating Agent, *provided* such corporation shall be otherwise eligible under this Section 6.12, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of the Trustees or the Authenticating Agent.

An Authenticating Agent may resign at any time by giving written notice thereof to the Trustees and to the Company. The Trustees may at any time terminate the agency of an Authenticating Agent by giving written notice thereof to such Authenticating Agent and to the Company. Upon receiving such a notice of resignation or upon such a termination, or in case at any time such Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section 6.12, the Trustees may appoint a successor Authenticating Agent which shall be acceptable to the Company and shall give written notice of such appointment to all Holders of Securities of the series with respect to which such Authenticating Agent will serve, in the manner provided for in Section 1.07. Any successor Authenticating Agent upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder, with like effect as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent. No successor Authenticating Agent shall be appointed unless eligible under the provisions of this Section 6.12.

The Trustees agree to pay to each Authenticating Agent from time to time reasonable compensation for its services under this Section 6.12, and the Trustees shall be entitled to be reimbursed for such payments, subject to the provisions of Section 6.07.

If an appointment with respect to one or more series is made pursuant to this Section 6.12, the Securities of such series may have endorsed thereon, in addition to either Trustee's certificate of authentication, an alternate certificate of authentication in the following form:

(Certificate of Authentication may be executed by either Trustee)

\_\_\_\_\_, as U.S. Trustee, certifies that this is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_,  
as U.S. Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
As Authenticating Agent

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Authorized Officer

\_\_\_\_\_, as Canadian Trustee, certifies that this is one of the Securities of the series designated therein referred to in the within-mentioned Indenture.

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_,  
as Canadian Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
As Authenticating Agent

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Authorized Officer

**SECTION 6.13 Joint Trustees .**

The rights, powers, duties and obligations conferred and imposed upon the Trustees are conferred and imposed upon and shall be exercised and performed by the U.S. Trustee and the Canadian Trustee individually, except to the extent the Trustees are required under Trust Indenture Legislation to perform such acts jointly, and neither Trustee shall be liable or responsible for the acts or omissions of the other Trustee. If the U.S. Trustee and Canadian Trustee are unable to agree jointly to act or refrain from acting, the applicable Trustee shall make the decision in accordance with its applicable legislation. Unless the context implies or requires otherwise, any written notice, request, direction, certificate, instruction, opinion or other document (each such document, a “**Writing**”) delivered pursuant to any provision of this Indenture to any of the U.S. Trustee or the Canadian Trustee shall be deemed for all purposes of this Indenture as delivery of such Writing to the Trustee. Each such Trustee in receipt of such Writing shall notify such other Trustee of its receipt of such Writing within two Business Days of such receipt *provided, however*, that any failure of such trustee in receipt of such Writing to so notify such other Trustee shall not be deemed as a deficiency in the delivery of such Writing to the Trustee.

**SECTION 6.14 Other Rights of Trustees .**

Each Trustee shall retain the right not to act and shall not be liable for refusing to act if, due to a lack of information or for any other reason whatsoever, either Trustee, in its sole judgment, determines that such act might cause it to be in non-compliance with any applicable anti-money laundering or anti-terrorist legislation, regulation or guideline. Further, should either Trustee, in its sole judgment, determine at any time that its acting under this Indenture has resulted in its being in non-compliance with any applicable anti-money laundering or anti-terrorist legislation, regulation or guideline, then it shall have the right to resign on 10 days written notice to all parties provided (i) that such Trustee’s written notice shall describe the circumstances of such non-compliance; and (ii) that if such circumstances are rectified to such Trustee’s satisfaction within such 10 day period, then such resignation shall not be effective.

The parties hereto acknowledge that Canadian federal and provincial legislation addressing the protection of individuals' personal information (collectively, "**Privacy Laws**") applies to obligations and activities under this Indenture. Despite any other provision of this Indenture, neither party shall take or direct any action that would contravene, or cause the other to contravene, applicable Privacy Laws. The Company, prior to transferring, or causing to be transferred, personal information to the Canadian Trustee, shall obtain and retain required consents of the relevant individuals to the collection, use and disclosure of their personal information, or shall have determined that such consents either have been previously given and can be relied on or are not required under Privacy Laws. The Canadian Trustee shall use commercially reasonable efforts to ensure that its services hereunder comply with Privacy Laws. Specifically, the Trustee agrees to (i) have designated a chief privacy officer; (ii) maintain policies and procedures to protect personal information and to receive and respond to any privacy complaint or inquiry; (iii) use personal information solely for the purposes of providing its services under or ancillary to this Indenture and not to use it for any other purpose except with the consent and direction of the Company; (iv) not sell or otherwise improperly disclose personal information to any third party; and (v) use employee administrative, physical and technological safeguards to reasonably secure and protect personal information against loss, theft or unauthorized access, use or modification.

It is expressly acknowledged and agreed that the Canadian Trustee may, in the course of providing services hereunder, collect or receive, use and disclose financial and other personal information about such parties and/or their representatives, as individuals, or about other individuals related to the subject matter hereof, and use such information for the following purposes:

- (i) to provide the services required under this Indenture and other services that may be requested from time to time;
- (ii) to help the Canadian Trustee manage its servicing relationships with such individuals;
- (iii) to meet the Canadian Trustee's legal and regulatory requirements; and
- (iv) if social insurance numbers are collected by the Canadian Trustee, to perform tax reporting and to assist in verification of an individual's identity for security purposes.

Further, each party agrees that it shall not provide or cause to be provided to the Canadian Trustee any personal information relating to an individual who is not a party to this Indenture unless that party has assured itself that such individual understands and has consented to the aforementioned uses and disclosures. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary herein, the Company and the Trustees may, without liability, disclose information about the Holders and beneficial owners or potential Holders or potential beneficial owners of the Securities pursuant to subpoena or other order issued by a court of competent jurisdiction or when otherwise required by applicable law.

Each Trustee hereby accepts the trusts in this Indenture declared and provided for and agrees to perform the same upon the terms and conditions herein set forth and to hold all rights, privileges and benefits conferred hereby and by law in trust for the various persons who shall from time to time be holders, subject to all the terms and conditions herein set forth.

**ARTICLE SEVEN  
HOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY TRUSTEE AND COMPANY**

**SECTION 7.01 Company to Furnish Trustees Names and Addresses of Holders .**

The Company will furnish or cause to be furnished to the Trustees (1) not more than 15 days after each Regular Record Date, or such lesser time as required by the Trustees, a list, in such form as the Trustees may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of Holders as of such Regular Record Date; *provided, however*, that the Company shall not be obligated to furnish or cause to be furnished such list at any time that the list shall not differ in any respect from the most recent list furnished to the Trustees by the Company or at such times as either Trustee is acting as Security Registrar for the applicable series of Securities and (2) at such other times as the Trustees may request in writing within 30 days after the receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than 15 days prior to the time such list is furnished.

**SECTION 7.02 Preservation of List of Names and Addresses of Holders .**

The Trustees shall preserve, in as current a form as is reasonably practicable, all information as to the names and addresses of the Holders contained in the most recent list furnished to them as provided in Section 7.01 and as to the names and addresses of Holders received by either Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar for the applicable series of Securities (if acting in such capacity).

The Trustees may destroy any list furnished as provided in Section 7.01 upon receipt of a new list so furnished.

Holders may communicate as provided in TIA Section 312(b) with other Holders with respect to their rights under this Indenture or under the Securities.

**SECTION 7.03 Disclosure of Names and Addresses of Holders .**

Every Holder of Securities or coupons, by receiving and holding the same, agrees with the Company and the Trustees that none of the Company or the Trustees or any agent of either of them shall be held accountable by reason of the disclosure of any such information as to the names and addresses of the Holders in accordance with TIA Section 312, regardless of the source from which such information was derived, and that the Trustees shall not be held accountable by reason of mailing any material pursuant to a request made under TIA Section 312(b).

**SECTION 7.04 Reports by Trustees .**

- (1) Within 60 days after May 15 of each year commencing with the first year after the first issuance of Securities pursuant to this Indenture, the U.S. Trustee shall transmit to the Holders of Securities, in the manner and to the extent provided in TIA Section 313(c), a brief report dated as of such reporting date, if required by TIA Section 313(a).
- (2) The U.S. Trustee shall comply with TIA Sections 313(b) and 313(c).
- (3) A copy of such report shall, at the time of such transmission to the Holders, be filed by the U.S. Trustee with the Company, with each securities exchange upon which any of the Securities are listed (if so listed) and also with the Commission. The Company agrees to notify the Trustees when the Securities become listed on any securities exchange.

**SECTION 7.05 Reports by the Company .**

- (1) The Company will file with the Trustees, within 20 days after filing with or furnishing to the Commission, copies of its annual reports and of the information, documents and other reports (or copies of such portions of any of the foregoing as the Commission may by rules and regulations prescribe) which the Company is required to file or furnish with the Commission pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act or, if the Company is not required to file information, documents or reports pursuant to either of such sections, then to file with the Trustees and the Commission, in accordance with rules and regulations prescribed by the Commission, such of the supplementary and periodic information, documents and reports which may be required pursuant to Section 13 of the Exchange Act in respect of a security listed and registered on a national securities exchange as may be prescribed in such rules and regulations; *provided* that any such reports, information or documents filed with the Commission pursuant to its Electronic Data Gathering, Analysis and Retrieval (EDGAR) system shall be deemed filed with the Trustees.
- (2) The Company will transmit to all Holders, in the manner and to the extent provided in TIA Section 313(c), within 30 days after the filing thereof with the Trustees, such summaries of any information, documents and reports required to be filed by the Company pursuant to paragraph (1) of this Section 7.05 as may be required by rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission.
- (3) If at any time the Securities are guaranteed by a direct or indirect parent of the Company, and such parent has furnished the reports required by this Section 7.05 with respect to parent as required by this Section 7.05 as if parent were the Company (including any financial information required hereby), the Company shall be deemed to be in compliance with this Section 7.05.

**ARTICLE EIGHT  
CONSOLIDATION, MERGER, CONVEYANCE, TRANSFER OR LEASE**

**SECTION 8.01 Company May Consolidate, etc., only on Certain Terms .**

The Company shall not amalgamate or consolidate with or merge into or enter into any statutory arrangement with any other Person, or, directly or indirectly, convey, transfer or lease all or substantially all of its properties and assets to any Person, unless:

- (1) the Person formed by or continuing from such amalgamation or consolidation or into which the Company is merged or with which it enters into such statutory arrangement or the Person which acquires by operation of law or by conveyance or transfer, or which leases, all or substantially all of the properties and assets of the Company shall be a corporation, partnership or trust organized and validly existing under the laws of Canada or any province or territory thereof, the United States of America or any state thereof or the District of Columbia or, if such amalgamation, consolidation, merger, statutory arrangement or other transaction would not impair the rights of Holders, any other country, and, unless the Company is the continuing corporation, shall expressly assume, by an indenture supplemental hereto, executed and delivered to the Trustees, in form satisfactory to the Trustees, the Company's obligation for the due and punctual payment of the principal of, premium (if any) and interest (if any) on all the Securities and the performance and observance of every covenant of this Indenture on the part of the Company to be performed or observed;

- (2) immediately after giving effect to such transaction, no Default or Event of Default shall have happened and be continuing; and
- (3) the Company or such Person shall have delivered to the Trustees an Officer's Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that such amalgamation, consolidation, merger, statutory arrangement or other transaction and such supplemental indenture comply with this Article Eight and that all conditions precedent herein provided for relating to such transaction have been complied with.

This Section 8.01 shall only apply to a merger, consolidation or amalgamation in which the Company is not the surviving Person and to conveyances, leases and transfers by the Company as transferor or lessor.

#### **SECTION 8.02 Successor Person Substituted .**

Upon any amalgamation or consolidation by the Company with or merger by the Company into any other corporation or a statutory arrangement or any conveyance, transfer or lease of all or substantially all of the properties and assets of the Company to any Person in accordance with Section 8.01, the successor Person formed by such amalgamation or consolidation or into which the Company is merged or statutory arrangement, or to which such conveyance, transfer or lease is made shall succeed to, and be substituted for, and may exercise every right and power of, the Company under this Indenture with the same effect as if such successor Person had been named as the Company herein, and in the event of any such conveyance or transfer, the Company (which term shall for this purpose mean the Person named as the "Company" in the first paragraph of this Indenture or any successor Person which shall theretofore become such in the manner described in Section 8.01), except in the case of a lease, shall be discharged of all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities and the coupons and may be dissolved and liquidated.

### **ARTICLE NINE SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES**

#### **SECTION 9.01 Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Holders .**

Notwithstanding Section 9.02, without the consent of any Holders, the Company, when authorized by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, and the Trustees, at any time and from time to time, may enter into one or more indentures supplemental hereto, in form satisfactory to the Trustees, for any of the following purposes:

- (1) to evidence the succession of another Person to the Company and the assumption by any such successor of the covenants of the Company contained herein and in the Securities; or
- (2) to add to the covenants of the Company for the benefit of the Holders of all or any series of Securities and any related coupons (and if such covenants are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such covenants are being included solely for the benefit of such series) or to surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Company; or

- (3) to add any additional Events of Default (and if such Events of Default are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such Events of Default are being included solely for the benefit of such series); or
- (4) to delete or modify any Events of Default with respect to all or any series of the Securities, the form and terms of which are being established pursuant to such supplemental indenture as permitted in Section 3.01 (and if such Events of Default are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such Events of Default are being included solely for the benefit of such series, and to specify the rights and remedies of the Trustees and the Holders of such Securities in connection therewith); or
- (5) to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture to provide that Bearer Securities may be registrable as to principal, to change or eliminate any restrictions on the payment of principal of or any premium or interest on Bearer Securities, to permit Bearer Securities to be issued in exchange for Registered Securities, to permit Bearer Securities to be issued in exchange for Bearer Securities of other authorized denominations or to permit or facilitate the issuance of Securities in uncertificated form; *provided* that any such action shall not adversely affect the interests of the Holders of Securities of any series or any related coupons in any material respect; or
- (6) to change or eliminate any of the provisions of this Indenture; *provided* that any such change or elimination shall become effective only when there is no Security Outstanding of any series created prior to the execution of such supplemental indenture which is entitled to the benefit of such provision; or
- (7) to establish the form or terms of Securities of any series as permitted by Sections 2.01 and 3.01; or
- (8) to evidence and provide for the acceptance of appointment hereunder by a successor Trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series and to add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, pursuant to the requirements of Section 6.10; or
- (9) to close this Indenture with respect to the authentication and delivery of additional series of Securities; or
- (10) to cure any ambiguity or to correct or supplement any provision contained herein or in any indenture supplemental hereto which may be defective or inconsistent with any other provision contained herein or in any supplemental indenture or to conform the terms hereof, as amended and supplemented, that are applicable to the Securities of any series to the description of the terms of such Securities in the offering memorandum, prospectus supplement or other offering document applicable to such Securities at the time of initial sale thereof; or
- (11) to make any change in any series of Securities that does not adversely affect in any material respect the rights of the Holders of such Securities; or
- (12) to add to or change or eliminate any provision of this Indenture as shall be necessary or desirable in accordance with any amendments to the Trust Indenture Act; or

- (13) to supplement any of the provisions of this Indenture to such extent as shall be necessary to permit or facilitate the defeasance and discharge of any series of Securities pursuant to Sections 4.01, 14.02 and 14.03; *provided* that any such action shall not adversely affect the interests of the Holders of Securities of such series and any related coupons or any other series of Securities in any material respect; or
- (14) to modify, eliminate or add to the provisions of this Indenture to such extent as shall be necessary to effect the qualifications of this Indenture under any applicable law of the United States and Canada or of any province or territory thereof to the extent they do not conflict with the applicable law of the United States heretofore or hereafter enacted.

#### **SECTION 9.02 Supplemental Indentures with Consent of Holders .**

Except as provided in Section 9.01 and this Section 9.02, with the consent of the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of all Outstanding Securities affected by such supplemental indenture, by Act of said Holders delivered to the Company and the Trustees, the Company, when authorized by or pursuant to a Board Resolution, and the Trustees may enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture which affect such series of Securities or of modifying in any manner the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series under this Indenture; *provided, however* , that no such supplemental indenture shall, without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security of such series,

- (1) change the Stated Maturity of the principal of, premium (if any) or any installment of interest (if any) on any Security of such series, or reduce the principal amount thereof, premium (if any) or the rate of interest (if any) thereon, or reduce the amount of the principal of an Original Issue Discount Security of such series that would be due and payable upon a declaration of acceleration of the Maturity thereof pursuant to Section 5.02 or the amount thereof provable in bankruptcy pursuant to Section 5.04, or adversely affect any right of repayment at the option of any Holder of any Security of such series, or change any Place of Payment where, or the Currency in which, any Security of such series or any premium or interest thereon is payable, or impair the right to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after the Stated Maturity thereof (or, in the case of redemption or repayment at the option of the Holder, on or after the Redemption Date or Repayment Date, as the case may be), or adversely affect any right to convert or exchange any Security as may be provided pursuant to Section 3.01 herein, or
- (2) reduce the percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series required for any such supplemental indenture, or the consent of whose Holders is required for any waiver of compliance with certain provisions of this Indenture which affect such series or certain defaults applicable to such series hereunder and their consequences provided for in this Indenture, or reduce the requirements of Section 15.04 for quorum or voting with respect to Securities of such series, or
- (3) modify any of the provisions of this 9.02 Section, Section 5.13 or Section 10.09, except to increase any such percentage or to provide that certain other provisions of this Indenture which affect such series cannot be modified or waived without the consent of the Holder of each Outstanding Security of such series.

A supplemental indenture which changes or eliminates any covenant or other provision of this Indenture which has expressly been included solely for the benefit of one or more particular series of Securities, or which modifies the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series with respect to such covenant or other provision, shall be deemed not to affect the rights under this Indenture of the Holders of Securities of any other series. Any such supplemental indenture adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture, or modifying in any manner the rights of the Holders of Securities of such series, shall not affect the rights under this Indenture of the Holders of Securities of any other series.

It shall not be necessary for any Act of Holders under this 9.02 Section to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such Act shall approve the substance thereof.

**SECTION 9.03 Execution of Supplemental Indentures .**

In executing, or accepting the additional trusts created by, any supplemental indenture permitted by this Article Nine or the modifications thereby of the trusts created by this Indenture, the Trustees shall be entitled to receive, and shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating that the execution of such supplemental indenture is authorized or permitted by this Indenture. Each Trustee may, but shall not be obligated to, enter into any such supplemental indenture which affects such Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

**SECTION 9.04 Effect of Supplemental Indentures .**

Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture under this Article Nine, this Indenture shall be modified in accordance therewith, and such supplemental indenture shall form a part of this Indenture for all purposes; and every Holder of Securities theretofore or thereafter authenticated and delivered hereunder shall be bound thereby.

**SECTION 9.05 Conformity with Trust Indenture Legislation .**

Every supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article Nine shall conform to the requirements of Trust Indenture Legislation as then in effect.

**SECTION 9.06 Reference in Securities to Supplemental Indentures .**

Securities of any series authenticated and delivered after the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to this Article Nine may, and shall if required by the Trustees, bear a notation in form approved by the Trustees as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities of any series so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Trustees and the Company, to any such supplemental indenture may be prepared and executed by the Company and authenticated and delivered by the Trustees in exchange for outstanding Securities of such series.

**SECTION 9.07 Notice of Supplemental Indentures .**

Promptly after the execution by the Company and the Trustees of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of Section 9.02, the Company shall give notice thereof to the Holders of each outstanding Security affected, in the manner provided for in Section 1.07, setting forth in general terms the substance of such supplemental indenture.

**ARTICLE TEN  
COVENANTS**

**SECTION      Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest .  
10.01**

The Company covenants and agrees for the benefit of the Holders of each series of Securities and any related coupons that it will duly and punctually pay the principal of, premium (if any) and interest (if any), on the Securities of that series in accordance with the terms of the Securities, any coupons appertaining thereto and this Indenture. Unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01 with respect to any series of Securities, any interest installments due on Bearer Securities on or before Maturity shall be payable only upon presentation and surrender of the several coupons for such interest installments as are evidenced thereby as they severally mature.

**SECTION      Maintenance of Office or Agency .  
10.02**

- (1) If the Securities of a series are issuable as Registered Securities, the Company will maintain in each Place of Payment for any series of Securities an office or agency where Securities of that series may be presented or surrendered for payment, where Securities of that series may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange, where Securities of that series that are convertible or exchangeable may be surrendered for conversion or exchange, as applicable, and where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of that series and this Indenture may be served and, if the Securities of a series are also issuable as Bearer Securities, where Bearer Securities of that series and related coupons may be presented or surrendered for payment in the circumstances described in Subsection 10.02(3).
- (2) If Securities of a series are issuable as Bearer Securities, the Company will maintain (A) subject to any laws or regulations applicable thereto, in a Place of Payment for that series which is located outside the United States, an office or agency where Securities of that series and related coupons may be presented and surrendered for payment; *provided, however*, that, if the Securities of that series are listed on any securities exchange located outside the United States and such securities exchange shall so require, the Company will maintain a Paying Agent for the Securities of that series in any required city located outside the United States so long as the Securities of that series are listed on such exchange and (B) subject to any laws or regulations applicable thereto, in a Place of Payment for that series located outside the United States an office or agency where any Registered Securities of that series may be surrendered for registration of transfer, where Securities of that series may be surrendered for exchange, where Securities of that series that are convertible and exchangeable may be surrendered for conversion or exchange, as applicable, and where notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of that series and this Indenture may be served.
- (3) The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustees of the location, and any change in the location, of such office or agency. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain any such required office or agency or shall fail to furnish the Trustees with the address thereof, such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Offices of the Trustees, except that Bearer Securities of any series and the related coupons may be presented and surrendered for payment at the offices specified in the Security and the Company hereby appoints the same as its agents to receive such respective presentations, surrenders, notices and demands.

- (4) Unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, no payment of principal, premium or interest on Bearer Securities shall be made at any office or agency of the Company in the United States or by check mailed to any address in the United States or by transfer to an account maintained with a bank located in the United States; *provided, however*, that, if the Securities of a series are payable in Dollars, payment of principal of, premium (if any) and interest (if any), on any Bearer Security shall be made at the office of the Company's Paying Agent in The City of New York, if (but only if) payment in Dollars of the full amount of such principal, premium or interest, as the case may be, at all offices or agencies outside the United States maintained for such purpose by the Company in accordance with this Indenture is illegal or effectively precluded by exchange controls or other similar restrictions.
- (5) The Company may also from time to time designate one or more other offices or agencies where the Securities of one or more series may be presented or surrendered for any or all such purposes and may from time to time rescind any such designation; *provided, however*, that no such designation or rescission shall in any manner relieve the Company of its obligation to maintain an office or agency in accordance with the requirements set forth above for Securities of any series for such purposes. The Company will give prompt written notice to the Trustees of any such designation or rescission and of any change in the location of any such other office or agency. Unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities as contemplated by Section 3.01 with respect to a series of Securities, the Company hereby initially appoints the U.S. Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office as Paying Agent in such city and as its agent to receive all such presentations, surrenders, notices and demands.
- (6) Unless otherwise specified with respect to any Securities pursuant to Section 3.01, if and so long as the Securities of any series (i) are denominated in a Currency other than Dollars or (ii) may be payable in a Currency other than Dollars, or so long as it is required under any other provision of the Indenture, then the Company will maintain with respect to each such series of Securities, or as so required, at least one Exchange Rate Agent.

**SECTION 10.03 Money for Securities Payments to Be Held in Trust .**

If the Company shall at any time act as its own Paying Agent with respect to any series of Securities and any related coupons, it will, on or before each due date of the principal of, premium (if any) or interest (if any) on any of the Securities of that series, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Sections 3.12(b), 3.12(d) and 3.12(e)) sufficient to pay the principal of, premium (if any) or interest (if any) on Securities of such series so becoming due until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided and will promptly notify the Trustees of its action or failure so to act.

Whenever the Company shall have one or more Paying Agents for any series of Securities and any related coupons, it will, prior to or on each due date of the principal of, premium (if any) or interest (if any) on any Securities of that series, deposit with a Paying Agent a sum (in the Currency described in the preceding paragraph) sufficient to pay the principal, premium (if any) or interest (if any) so becoming due, such sum to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such principal, premium or interest, and (unless such Paying Agent is a Trustee) the Company will promptly notify the Trustees of its action or failure so to act.

The Company will cause each Paying Agent (other than the Trustees) for any series of Securities to execute and deliver to the Trustees an instrument in which such Paying Agent shall agree with the Trustees, subject to the provisions of this 10.03 Section, that such Paying Agent will:

- (1) hold all sums held by it for the payment of the principal of, premium (if any) and interest (if any) on Securities of such series in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided;
- (2) give the Trustees notice of any default by the Company (or any other obligor upon the Securities of such series) in the making of any payment of principal of, premium (if any) or interest (if any) on the Securities of such series; and
- (3) at any time during the continuance of any such default, upon the written request of the Trustees, forthwith pay to the Trustees all sums so held in trust by such Paying Agent.

The Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or for any other purpose, pay, or by Company Order direct any Paying Agent to pay, to the Trustees all sums held in trust by the Company or such Paying Agent, such sums to be held by the Trustees upon the same trusts as those upon which sums were held by the Company or such Paying Agent; and, upon such payment by any Paying Agent to the Trustees, such Paying Agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such sums.

Except as provided in the Securities of any series, any money deposited with the Trustees or any Paying Agent, or then held by the Company, in trust for the payment of the principal of, premium (if any) or interest (if any) on any Security of any series, or any coupon appertaining thereto, and remaining unclaimed for two years after such principal, premium or interest has become due and payable shall be paid to the Company on Company Request, or (if then held by the Company) shall be discharged from such trust; and the Holder of such Security or coupon shall thereafter, as an unsecured general creditor, look only to the Company for payment thereof, and all liability of the Trustees or such Paying Agent with respect to such trust money, and all liability of the Company as trustee thereof, shall thereupon cease; *provided, however*, that the Trustees or such Paying Agent, before being required to make any such repayment, may at the expense of the Company cause to be published once, in an Authorized Newspaper, notice that such money remains unclaimed and that, after a date specified therein, which shall not be less than 30 days from the date of such publication, any unclaimed balance of such money then remaining will be repaid to the Company.

**SECTION Statement as to Compliance .**  
**10.04**

The Company shall deliver to the Trustees, on or before 120 days after the end of the Company's fiscal year, an Officer's Certificate stating that a review of the activities of the Company during such fiscal year has been made under the supervision of the signing Officer with a view to determining whether the Company has kept, observed, performed and fulfilled its obligations under this Indenture, and further stating, as to such Officer, that the Company has kept, observed, performed and fulfilled each and every covenant contained in this Indenture and is not in default in the performance or observance of any of the terms, provisions and conditions hereof (or, if a Default or Event of Default shall have occurred and is continuing, describing all such Defaults or Events of Default of which he or she may have knowledge and what action the Company is taking or propose to take with respect thereto). The Company shall deliver to the Trustees upon demand evidence in such form as the Trustees may require as to compliance by the Company with any condition or covenant of the Company set out herein relating to any action required or permitted to be taken by the Company under this Indenture or as a result of any obligation imposed by this Indenture. For purposes of this Section 10.04, such compliance shall be determined without regard to any period of grace or requirement of notice under this Indenture.

**SECTION 10.05 Payment of Taxes and Other Claims .**

The Company will pay or discharge or cause to be paid or discharged, before the same shall become delinquent, (1) all material taxes, assessments and governmental charges levied or imposed upon the Company or upon the income, profits or property of the Company, and (2) all material lawful claims for labor, materials and supplies which, if unpaid, might by law become a Lien upon any property or assets of the Company; *provided, however* , that the Company shall not be required to pay or discharge or cause to be paid or discharged any such tax, assessment, charge or claim whose amount, applicability or validity is being contested in good faith by appropriate proceedings.

**SECTION 10.06 Corporate Existence .**

Subject to Article Eight, the Company will do or cause to be done all things necessary to preserve and keep in full force and effect its corporate existence and the rights (charter and statutory) and franchises of the Company; *provided, however* , that the Company shall not be required to preserve any such right or franchise if the Company shall determine that the preservation thereof is no longer desirable in the conduct of the business of the Company.

**SECTION 10.07 Waiver of Certain Covenants .**

The Company may, with respect to any series of Securities, omit in any particular instance to comply with any term, provision or condition which affects such series set forth in Sections 10.06 and 10.07, or, as specified pursuant to Section 3.01(19) for Securities of such series, in any covenants of the Company added to this Article Ten pursuant to Section 3.01(19) in connection with Securities of such series, if before the time for such compliance the Holders of at least a majority in principal amount of all Outstanding Securities of any series, by Act of such Holders, waive such compliance in such instance with such term, provision or condition, but no such waiver shall extend to or affect such term, provision or condition except to the extent so expressly waived, and, until such waiver shall become effective, the obligations of the Company and the duties of the Trustees to Holders of Securities of such series in respect of any such term, provision or condition shall remain in full force and effect.

**ARTICLE ELEVEN  
REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES**

**SECTION 11.01 Applicability of Article .**

Securities of any series which are redeemable before their Stated Maturity shall be redeemable in accordance with the terms of such Securities and (except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01 for Securities of any series) in accordance with this Article Eleven.

**SECTION 11.02 Election to Redeem; Notice to Trustees .**

The election of the Company to redeem any Securities shall be evidenced by or pursuant to a Board Resolution. In case of any redemption at the election of the Company, the Company shall, at least 60 days prior to the Redemption Date fixed by the Company (unless a shorter notice shall be satisfactory to the Trustees), notify the Trustees of such Redemption Date and of the principal amount of Securities of such series to be redeemed and shall deliver to the Trustees such documentation and records as shall enable the Trustees to select the Securities to be redeemed pursuant to Section 11.03. In the case of any redemption of Securities prior to the expiration of any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, the Company shall furnish to the Trustees an Officer's Certificate evidencing compliance with such restriction.

**SECTION 11.03 Selection by Trustees of Securities to Be Redeemed .**

If less than all the Securities of any series are to be redeemed, the particular Securities to be redeemed shall be selected not more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date by the Trustees, from the Outstanding Securities of such series not previously called for redemption, by such method as the Trustees shall deem fair and appropriate and which may provide for the selection for redemption of portions of the principal of Securities of such series; *provided, however*, that no such partial redemption shall reduce the portion of the principal amount of a Security not redeemed to less than the minimum authorized denomination for Securities of such series established pursuant to Section 3.01.

The Trustees shall promptly notify the Company in writing of the Securities selected for redemption and, in the case of any Securities selected for partial redemption, the principal amount thereof to be redeemed.

For all purposes of this Indenture, unless the context otherwise requires, all provisions relating to the redemption of Securities shall relate, in the case of any Security redeemed or to be redeemed only in part, to the portion of the principal amount of such Security which has been or is to be redeemed.

**SECTION 11.04 Notice of Redemption .**

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, notice of redemption shall be given in the manner provided for in Section 1.07 not less than 30 nor more than 60 days prior to the Redemption Date, to each Holder of Securities to be redeemed. Failure to give notice in the manner provided in Section 1.07 to the Holder of any Securities designated for redemption as a whole or in part, or any defect in the notice to any such Holder, shall not affect the validity of the proceedings for the redemption of any other Securities or portion thereof.

All notices of redemption shall state:

- (1) the Redemption Date,
- (2) the Redemption Price and the amount of accrued interest to the Redemption Date payable as provided in Section 11.06, if any,
- (3) if less than all the Outstanding Securities of any series are to be redeemed, the identification (and, in the case of partial redemption, the principal amounts) of the particular Securities to be redeemed,
- (4) in case any Security is to be redeemed in part only, the notice which relates to such Security shall state that on and after the Redemption Date, upon surrender of such Security, the Holder will receive, without charge, a new Security or Securities of authorized denominations for the principal amount thereof remaining unredeemed,
- (5) that on the Redemption Date, the Redemption Price and accrued interest (if any) to the Redemption Date payable as provided in Section 11.06 will become due and payable upon each such Security, or the portion thereof, to be redeemed and, if applicable, that interest thereon will cease to accrue on and after said date,

- (6) the Place or Places of Payment where such Securities, together in the case of Bearer Securities with all coupons appertaining thereto, if any, maturing after the Redemption Date, are to be surrendered for payment of the Redemption Price and accrued interest (if any),
- (7) that the redemption is for a sinking fund, if such is the case,
- (8) that, unless otherwise specified in such notice, Bearer Securities of any series, if any, surrendered for redemption must be accompanied by all coupons maturing subsequent to the Redemption Date or the amount of any such missing coupon or coupons will be deducted from the Redemption Price unless security or indemnity satisfactory to the Company, the Trustees and any Paying Agent is furnished, and
- (9) if Bearer Securities of any series are to be redeemed and any Registered Securities of such series are not to be redeemed, and if such Bearer Securities may be exchanged for Registered Securities not subject to redemption on such Redemption Date pursuant to Section 3.05 or otherwise, the last date, as determined by the Company, on which such exchanges may be made.

Notice of redemption of Securities to be redeemed at the election of the Company shall be given by the Company or, at the Company's request, by the Trustees in the name and at the expense of the Company.

**SECTION     Deposit of Redemption Price .**  
**11.05**

Prior to any Redemption Date, the Company shall deposit with a Trustee or with a Paying Agent (or, if the Company is acting as its own Paying Agent, segregate and hold in trust as provided in Section 10.03) an amount of money in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Sections 3.12(b), 3.12(d) and 3.12(e)) sufficient to pay the Redemption Price of, and accrued interest (if any) on, all the Securities which are to be redeemed on that date.

**SECTION     Securities Payable on Redemption Date .**  
**11.06**

Notice of redemption having been given as aforesaid, the Securities so to be redeemed shall, on the Redemption Date, become due and payable at the Redemption Price therein specified in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Sections 3.12(b), 3.12(d) and 3.12(e)) (together with accrued interest (if any) to the Redemption Date), and from and after such date (unless the Company shall default in the payment of the Redemption Price and accrued interest (if any)) such Securities shall, if the same were interest-bearing, cease to bear interest and the coupons for such interest appertaining to any Bearer Securities so to be redeemed, except to the extent provided below, shall be void. Upon surrender of any such Security for redemption in accordance with said notice, together with all coupons, if any, appertaining thereto maturing after the Redemption Date, such Security shall be paid by the Company at the Redemption Price, together with accrued interest (if any), to the Redemption Date; *provided, however* , that installments of interest on Bearer Securities whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to the Redemption Date shall be payable only at an office or agency located outside the United States (except as otherwise provided in Section 10.02) and, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, only upon presentation and surrender of coupons for such interest; *provided further* that installments of interest on Registered Securities whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to the Redemption Date shall be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, registered as such at the close of business on the relevant record dates according to their terms and the provisions of Section 3.07.

If any Bearer Security surrendered for redemption shall not be accompanied by all appurtenant coupons maturing after the Redemption Date, such Security may be paid after deducting from the Redemption Price an amount equal to the face amount of all such missing coupons, or the surrender of such missing coupon or coupons may be waived by the Company and the Trustees if there be furnished to them such security or indemnity as they may require to save each of them and any Paying Agent harmless. If thereafter the Holder of such Security shall surrender to the Trustees or any Paying Agent any such missing coupon in respect of which a deduction shall have been made from the Redemption Price, such Holder shall be entitled to receive the amount so deducted; *provided, however*, that interest represented by coupons shall be payable only at an office or agency located outside the United States (except as otherwise provided in Section 10.02) and, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, only upon presentation and surrender of those coupons.

If any Security called for redemption shall not be so paid upon surrender thereof for redemption, the principal and premium (if any) shall, until paid, bear interest from the Redemption Date at the rate of interest or Yield to Maturity (in the case of Original Issue Discount Securities) set forth in such Security.

**SECTION     Securities Redeemed in Part .**  
**11.07**

Any Security which is to be redeemed only in part (pursuant to the provisions of this Article Eleven or of Article Twelve) shall be surrendered at a Place of Payment therefor (with, if the Company or the Trustees so requires, due endorsement by, or a written instrument of transfer in form satisfactory to the Company and the Trustees duly executed by, the Holder thereof or such Holder's attorney duly authorized in writing), and the Company shall execute, and the applicable Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Holder of such Security without service charge, a new Security or Securities of the same series, of any authorized denomination as requested by such Holder, in aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for the unredeemed portion of the principal of the Security so surrendered.

**ARTICLE TWELVE**  
**SINKING FUNDS**

**SECTION     Applicability of Article .**  
**12.01**

Retirements of Securities of any series pursuant to any sinking fund shall be made in accordance with the terms of such Securities and (except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01 for Securities of any series) in accordance with this Article Twelve.

The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of Securities of any series is herein referred to as a “ **mandatory sinking fund payment** ,” and any payment in excess of such minimum amount provided for by the terms of Securities of any series is herein referred to as an “ **optional sinking fund payment** ”. If provided for by the terms of Securities of any series, the cash amount of any mandatory sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in Section 12.02. Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities of any series as provided for by the terms of Securities of such series.

**SECTION     Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities .**  
**12.02**

Subject to Section 12.03, in lieu of making all or any part of any mandatory sinking fund payment with respect to any Securities of a series in cash, the Company may at its option (1) deliver to the Trustees Outstanding Securities of a such series (other than any previously called for redemption) theretofore purchased or otherwise acquired by the Company together in the case of any Bearer Securities of such series with all un-matured coupons appertaining thereto, and/or (2) receive credit for the principal amount of Securities of such series which have been previously delivered to the Trustees by the Company or redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Securities or through the application of permitted optional sinking fund payments pursuant to the terms of such Securities, in each case in satisfaction of all or any part of any mandatory sinking fund payment with respect to the Securities of the same series required to be made pursuant to the terms of such Securities as provided for by the terms of such series; *provided, however*, that such Securities have not been previously so credited. Such Securities shall be received and credited for such purpose by the Trustees at the Redemption Price specified in such Securities for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such mandatory sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly.

**SECTION 12.03 Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund .**

Not less than 60 days prior to each sinking fund payment date for any series of Securities, the Company will deliver to the Trustees an Officer's Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing sinking fund payment for that series pursuant to the terms of that series, the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by payment of cash in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Sections 3.12(b), 3.12(d) and 3.12(e)) and the portion thereof, if any, which is to be satisfied by delivering or crediting Securities of that series pursuant to Section 12.02 (which Securities will, if not previously delivered, accompany such certificate) and whether the Company intends to exercise its right to make a permitted optional sinking fund payment with respect to such series.

Such certificate shall be irrevocable and upon its delivery the Company shall be obligated to make the cash payment or payments therein referred to, if any, on or before the next succeeding sinking fund payment date. In the case of the failure of the Company to deliver such certificate, the sinking fund payment due on the next succeeding sinking fund payment date for that series shall be paid entirely in cash and shall be sufficient to redeem the principal amount of such Securities subject to a mandatory sinking fund payment without the option to deliver or credit Securities as provided in Section 12.02 and without the right to make any optional sinking fund payment, if any, with respect to such series.

Not more than 60 days before each such sinking fund payment date the Trustees shall select the Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in Section 11.03 and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the expense of the Company in the manner provided in Section 11.04. Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in Sections 11.06 and 11.07.

Prior to any sinking fund payment date, the Company shall pay to the Trustees or a Paying Agent (or, if the Company is acting as its own Paying Agent, segregate and hold in trust as provided in Section 10.03) in cash a sum equal to any interest that will accrue to the date fixed for redemption of Securities or portions thereof to be redeemed on such sinking fund payment date pursuant to this 12.03 Section.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, with respect to a sinking fund for any series of Securities, if at any time the amount of cash to be paid into such sinking fund on the next succeeding sinking fund payment date, together with any unused balance of any preceding sinking fund payment or payments for such series, does not exceed in the aggregate \$100,000, the Trustees, unless requested by the Company, shall not give the next succeeding notice of the redemption of Securities of such series through the operation of the sinking fund. Any such unused balance of moneys deposited in such sinking fund shall be added to the sinking fund payment for such series to be made in cash on the next succeeding sinking fund payment date or, at the request of the Company, shall be applied at any time or from time to time to the purchase of Securities of such series, by public or private purchase, in the open market or otherwise, at a purchase price for such Securities (excluding accrued interest and brokerage commissions, for which the Trustees or any Paying Agent will be reimbursed by the Company) not in excess of the principal amount thereof.

**ARTICLE THIRTEEN**  
**REPAYMENT AT OPTION OF HOLDERS**

**SECTION     Applicability of Article .**  
**13.01**

Repayment of Securities of any series before their Stated Maturity at the option of Holders thereof shall be made in accordance with the terms of such Securities and (except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01 for Securities of any series) in accordance with this Article Thirteen.

**SECTION     Repayment of Securities .**  
**13.02**

Securities of any series subject to repayment in whole or in part at the option of the Holders thereof will, unless otherwise provided in the terms of such Securities, be repaid at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, together with interest (if any) thereon accrued to the Repayment Date specified in or pursuant to the terms of such Securities. The Company covenants that, with respect to such Securities, on or before the Repayment Date it will deposit with a Trustee or with a Paying Agent (or, if the Company is acting as its own Paying Agent, segregate and hold in trust as provided in Section 10.03) an amount of money in the Currency in which the Securities of such series are payable (except as otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01 for the Securities of such series and except, if applicable, as provided in Sections 3.12(b), 3.12(d) and 3.12(e)) sufficient to pay the principal (or, if so provided by the terms of the Securities of any series, a percentage of the principal) of and (except if the Repayment Date shall be an Interest Payment Date) accrued interest (if any) on, all the Securities or portions thereof, as the case may be, to be repaid on such date.

**SECTION     Exercise of Option .**  
**13.03**

Securities of any series subject to repayment at the option of the Holders thereof will contain an "Option to Elect Repayment" form on the reverse of such Securities. To be repaid at the option of the Holder, any Security so providing for such repayment, with the "Option to Elect Repayment" form on the reverse of such Security duly completed by the Holder (or by the Holder's attorney duly authorized in writing), must be received by the Company at the Place of Payment therefor specified in the terms of such Security (or at such other place or places which the Company shall from time to time notify the Holders of such Securities) not earlier than 45 days nor later than 30 days prior to the Repayment Date. If less than the entire principal amount of such Security is to be repaid in accordance with the terms of such Security, the principal amount of such Security to be repaid, in increments of the minimum denomination for Securities of such series, and the denomination or denominations of the Security or Securities to be issued to the Holder for the portion of the principal amount of such Security surrendered that is not to be repaid, must be specified. The principal amount of any Security providing for repayment at the option of the Holder thereof may not be repaid in part if, following such repayment, the unpaid principal amount of such Security would be less than the minimum authorized denomination of Securities of the series of which such Security to be repaid is a part. Except as otherwise may be provided by the terms of any Security providing for repayment at the option of the Holder thereof, exercise of the repayment option by the Holder shall be irrevocable unless waived by the Company.

**SECTION 13.04 When Securities Presented for Repayment Become Due and Payable .**

If Securities of any series providing for repayment at the option of the Holders thereof shall have been surrendered as provided in this Article Thirteen and as provided by or pursuant to the terms of such Securities, such Securities or the portions thereof, as the case may be, to be repaid shall become due and payable and shall be paid by the Company on the Repayment Date therein specified, and on and after such Repayment Date (unless the Company shall default in the payment of such Securities on such Repayment Date) such Securities shall, if the same were interest-bearing, cease to bear interest and the coupons for such interest appertaining to any Bearer Securities so to be repaid, except to the extent provided below, shall be void. Upon surrender of any such Security for repayment in accordance with such provisions, together with all coupons, if any, appertaining thereto maturing after the Repayment Date, the principal amount of such Security so to be repaid shall be paid by the Company, together with accrued interest (if any) to the Repayment Date; *provided, however*, that coupons whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to the Repayment Date shall be payable only at an office or agency located outside the United States (except as otherwise provided in Section 10.02) and, unless otherwise specified pursuant to Section 3.01, only upon presentation and surrender of such coupons; *provided further* that, in the case of Registered Securities, installments of interest (if any) whose Stated Maturity is on or prior to the Repayment Date shall be payable to the Holders of such Securities, or one or more Predecessor Securities, registered as such at the close of business on the relevant Record Dates according to their terms and the provisions of Section 3.07.

If any Bearer Security surrendered for repayment shall not be accompanied by all appurtenant coupons maturing after the Repayment Date, such Security may be paid after deducting from the amount payable therefor as provided in Section 13.02 an amount equal to the face amount of all such missing coupons, or the surrender of such missing coupon or coupons may be waived by the Company and the Trustees if there be furnished to them such security or indemnity as they may require to save each of them and any Paying Agent harmless. If thereafter the Holder of such Security shall surrender to the Trustees or any Paying Agent any such missing coupon in respect of which a deduction shall have been made as provided in the preceding sentence, such Holder shall be entitled to receive the amount so deducted; *provided, however*, that interest represented by coupons shall be payable only at an office or agency located outside the United States (except as otherwise provided in Section 10.02) and, unless otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01, only upon presentation and surrender of those coupons.

If any Security surrendered for repayment shall not be so repaid upon surrender thereof for repayment, the principal amount and premium (if any) shall, until paid, bear interest from the Repayment Date at the rate of interest or Yield to Maturity (in the case of Original Issue Discount Securities) set forth in such Security.

**SECTION 13.05 Securities Repaid in Part .**

Upon surrender of any Registered Security which is to be repaid in part only, the Company shall execute and the applicable Trustee shall authenticate and deliver to the Holder of such Security, without service charge and at the expense of the Company, a new Registered Security or Securities of the same series, of any authorized denomination specified by the Holder, in an aggregate principal amount equal to and in exchange for the portion of the principal of such Security so surrendered which is not to be repaid.

**ARTICLE FOURTEEN**  
**DEFEASANCE AND COVENANT DEFEASANCE**

**SECTION 14.01      Company's Option to Effect Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance .**

Except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 3.01 for Securities of any series, the provisions of this Article Fourteen shall apply to each series of Securities, and the Company may, at its option, effect defeasance of the Securities of or within a series under Section 14.02, or covenant defeasance of or within a series under Section 14.03 in accordance with the terms of such Securities and in accordance with this Article Fourteen.

**SECTION 14.02      Defeasance and Discharge .**

Upon the Company's exercise of the above option applicable to this Section 14.02 with respect to any Securities of or within a series, the Company shall be deemed to have been discharged from its obligations with respect to such Securities and any related coupons on the date the conditions set forth in Section 14.04 are satisfied (hereinafter, "**defeasance**"). For this purpose, such defeasance means that the Company shall be deemed to have paid and discharged the entire indebtedness represented by such Securities and any related coupons, which shall thereafter be deemed to be "Outstanding" only for the purposes of Section 14.05 and the other Sections of this Indenture referred to in (A) and (B) below, and to have satisfied all of its other obligations under such Securities and any related coupons and this Indenture insofar as such Securities and any related coupons are concerned (and the Trustees, at the expense of the Company, shall execute proper instruments acknowledging the same), except for the following which shall survive until otherwise terminated or discharged hereunder: (A) the rights of Holders of such Securities and any related coupons to receive, solely from the trust fund described in Section 14.04 and as more fully set forth in such Section, payments in respect of the principal of, premium (if any) and interest (if any) on such Securities and any related coupons when such payments are due, (B) the Company's obligations with respect to such Securities under Sections 3.05, 3.06, 10.02 and 10.03, (C) the rights, powers, trusts, duties and immunities of the Trustees hereunder and (D) this Article Fourteen. Subject to compliance with this Article Fourteen, the Company may exercise its option under this Section 14.02 notwithstanding the prior exercise of its option under Section 14.03 with respect to such Securities and any related coupons.

**SECTION 14.03      Covenant Defeasance .**

Upon the Company's exercise of the above option applicable to this Section 14.03 with respect to any Securities of or within a series, the Company shall be released from its obligations under Sections 10.05 and 10.06, and, if specified pursuant to Section 3.01, its obligations under any other covenant, with respect to such Securities and any related coupons on and after the date the conditions set forth in Section 14.04 are satisfied (hereinafter, "**covenant defeasance**"), and such Securities and any related coupons shall thereafter be deemed not to be "Outstanding" for the purposes of any direction, waiver, consent or declaration or Act of Holders (and the consequences of any thereof) in connection with such covenants, but shall continue to be deemed "Outstanding" for all other purposes hereunder. For this purpose, such covenant defeasance means that, with respect to such Securities and any related coupons, the Company may omit to comply with and shall have no liability in respect of any term, condition or limitation set forth in any such covenant, whether directly or indirectly, by reason of any reference elsewhere herein to any such covenant or by reason of reference in any such covenant to any other provision herein or in any other document and such omission to comply shall not constitute a Default or an Event of Default under clauses (4) or (7) of Section 5.01 or otherwise but, except as specified above, the remainder of this Indenture and such Securities and any related coupons shall be unaffected thereby.

**SECTION 14.04**      **Conditions to Defeasance or Covenant Defeasance .**

The following shall be the conditions to application of either Section 14.02 or Section 14.03 to any Securities of or within a series and any related coupons:

- (1) The Company shall irrevocably have deposited or caused to be deposited with either Trustee (or another trustee satisfying the requirements of Section 6.08 who shall agree to comply with the provisions of this Article Fourteen applicable to it) as trust funds in trust for the purpose of making the following payments, specifically pledged as security for, and dedicated solely to, the benefit of the Holders of such Securities and any related coupons, (A) an amount (in such Currency in which such Securities and any related coupons are then specified as payable at Stated Maturity), or (B) Government Obligations applicable to such Securities (determined on the basis of the Currency in which such Securities are then specified as payable at Stated Maturity) which through the scheduled payment of principal and interest in respect thereof in accordance with their terms will provide, not later than one day before the due date of any payment of principal of and premium (if any) and interest (if any) under such Securities and any related coupons, money in an amount, or (C) a combination thereof, sufficient, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustees, to pay and discharge, and which shall be applied by the Trustees (or another trustee satisfying the requirements of Section 6.08 who shall agree to comply with the provisions of this Article Fourteen) to pay and discharge, (i) the principal of, premium (if any) and interest (if any) on such Securities and any related coupons on the Stated Maturity (or Redemption Date, if applicable) of such principal of, premium (if any) or installment of interest (if any), (ii) any mandatory sinking fund payments or analogous payments applicable to such Securities and any related coupons on the day on which such payments are due and payable in accordance with the terms of this Indenture and of such Securities and any related coupons, and (iii) all amounts due the Trustees under Section 6.07; *provided* that the Trustees shall have been irrevocably instructed to apply such money or the proceeds of such Government Obligations to said payments with respect to such Securities and any related coupons. Before such a deposit, the Company may give to the Trustees, in accordance with Section 11.02, a notice of its election to redeem all or any portion of such Securities at a future date in accordance with the terms of such Securities and Article Eleven hereof, which notice shall be irrevocable. Such irrevocable redemption notice, if given, shall be given effect in applying the foregoing.
- (2) No Default or Event of Default with respect to such Securities or any related coupons shall have occurred and be continuing on the date of such deposit or, insofar as clauses (5) and (6) of Section 5.01 are concerned, at any time during the period ending on the 91st day after the date of such deposit (it being understood that this condition shall not be deemed satisfied until the expiration of such period).
- (3) Such defeasance or covenant defeasance shall not result in a breach or violation of, or constitute a Default or an Event of Default under, this Indenture or any default under any material agreement or instrument to which the Company is a party or by which it is bound.
- (4) In the case of an election under Section 14.02, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustees an Opinion of Counsel in the United States stating that (x) the Company has received from, or there has been published by, the Internal Revenue Service a ruling, or (y) since the date of execution of this Indenture, there has been a change in the applicable United States federal income tax law, in either case to the effect that, and based thereon such opinion shall confirm that, the Holders of such Securities and any related coupons will not recognize income, gain or loss for United States federal income tax purposes as a result of such defeasance and will be subject to United States federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such defeasance had not occurred.

- (5) In the case of an election under Section 14.03, the Company shall have delivered to the Trustees an Opinion of Counsel in the United States to the effect that the Holders of such Securities will not recognize income, gain or loss for United States federal income tax purposes as a result of such covenant defeasance and will be subject to United States federal income tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case if such covenant defeasance had not occurred.
- (6) The Company shall have delivered to the Trustees an Opinion of Counsel in Canada or a ruling from the Canada Revenue Agency to the effect that the Holders of such Securities will not recognize income, gain or loss for Canadian federal, provincial or territorial income tax or other tax purposes as a result of such defeasance or covenant defeasance, as applicable, and will be subject to Canadian federal, provincial or territorial income tax and other tax on the same amounts, in the same manner and at the same times as would have been the case had such defeasance or covenant defeasance, as applicable, not occurred (and for the purposes of such opinion, such Canadian counsel shall assume that Holders of such Securities include Holders who are not resident in Canada).
- (7) The Company is not an “insolvent person” within the meaning of the Bankruptcy and Insolvency Act (Canada) on the date of such deposit or at any time during the period ending on the 91st day after the date of such deposit (it being understood that this condition shall not be deemed satisfied until the expiration of such period).
- (8) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Section 14.04, such defeasance or covenant defeasance shall be effected in compliance with any additional or substitute terms, conditions or limitations in connection therewith pursuant to Section 3.01.
- (9) The Company shall have delivered to the Trustees an Officer’s Certificate and an Opinion of Counsel, each stating that all conditions precedent provided for, relating to either the defeasance under Section 14.02 or the covenant defeasance under Section 14.03 (as the case may be), have been complied with.

**SECTION 14.05 Deposited Money and Government Obligations to Be Held in Trust; Other Miscellaneous Provisions .**

Subject to the provisions of the last paragraph of Section 10.03, all money and Government Obligations (or other property as may be provided pursuant to Section 3.01) (including the proceeds thereof) deposited with a Trustee (or another trustee satisfying the requirements of Section 6.08 who shall agree to comply with the provisions of this Article Fourteen) pursuant to Section 14.04 in respect of such Securities and any related coupons shall be held in trust and applied by such Trustee, in accordance with the provisions of such Securities and any related coupons and this Indenture, to the payment, either directly or through any Paying Agent (including the Company acting as its own Paying Agent), to the Holders of such Securities and any related coupons of all sums due and to become due thereon in respect of principal, premium (if any) and interest (if any) on such Securities but such money need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law.

Unless otherwise specified with respect to any Security pursuant to Section 3.01, if, after a deposit referred to in Section 14.04(1) has been made, (a) the Holder of a Security in respect of which such deposit was made is entitled to, and does, elect pursuant to Section 3.12(b) or the terms of such Security to receive payment in a Currency other than that in which the deposit pursuant to Section 14.04(1) has been made in respect of such Security, or (b) a Conversion Event occurs as contemplated in Section 3.12(d) or 3.12(e) or by the terms of any Security in respect of which the deposit pursuant to Section 14.04(1) has been made, the indebtedness represented by such Security and any related coupons shall be deemed to have been, and will be, fully discharged and satisfied through the payment of the principal of, premium (if any) and interest (if any) on such Security as they become due out of the proceeds yielded by converting (from time to time as specified below in the case of any such election) the amount or other property deposited in respect of such Security into the Currency in which such Security becomes payable as a result of such election or Conversion Event based on the applicable Market Exchange Rate for such Currency in effect on the third Business Day prior to each payment date, except, with respect to a Conversion Event, for such Currency in effect (as nearly as feasible) at the time of the Conversion Event.

The Company shall pay and indemnify such Trustee against any tax, fee or other charge imposed on or assessed against the Government Obligations deposited pursuant to Section 14.04 or the principal and interest received in respect thereof other than any such tax, fee or other charge which by law is for the account of the Holders of such Securities and any related coupons.

Anything in this Article Fourteen to the contrary notwithstanding, such Trustee shall deliver or pay to the Company from time to time upon Company Request any money or Government Obligations (or other property and any proceeds therefrom) held by it as provided in Section 14.04 which, in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to such Trustee, are in excess of the amount thereof which would then be required to be deposited to effect an equivalent defeasance or covenant defeasance, as applicable, in accordance with this Article Fourteen.

**SECTION     Reinstatement .**  
**14.06**

If a Trustee or any Paying Agent is unable to apply any money in accordance with Section 14.05 by reason of any order or judgment of any court or governmental authority enjoining, restraining or otherwise prohibiting such application, then the Company's obligations under this Indenture and such Securities and any related coupons shall be revived and reinstated as though no deposit had occurred pursuant to Section 14.02 or 14.03, as the case may be, until such time as such Trustee or Paying Agent is permitted to apply all such money in accordance with Section 14.05; *provided, however*, that if the Company makes any payment of principal of, premium (if any) or interest (if any) on any such Security or any related coupon following the reinstatement of its obligations, the Company shall be subrogated to the rights of the Holders of such Securities and any related coupons to receive such payment from the money held by such Trustee or Paying Agent.

**ARTICLE FIFTEEN  
MEETINGS OF HOLDERS OF SECURITIES**

**SECTION 15.01 Purposes for Which Meetings May Be Called .**

If Securities of a series are issuable as Bearer Securities, a meeting of Holders of Securities of such series may be called at any time and from time to time pursuant to this Article Fifteen to make, give or take any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by this Indenture to be made, given or taken by Holders of Securities of such series.

**SECTION 15.02 Call, Notice and Place of Meetings .**

- (1) The Trustees may at any time call a meeting of Holders of Securities of any series for any purpose specified in Section 15.01, to be held at such time and at such place in The City of New York, in Toronto or in London as the Trustees shall determine. Notice of every meeting of Holders of Securities of any series, setting forth the time and the place of such meeting and in general terms the action proposed to be taken at such meeting, shall be given, in the manner provided for in Section 1.07, not less than 21 nor more than 180 days prior to the date fixed for the meeting.
- (2) In case at any time the Company, pursuant to a Board Resolution, or the Holders of at least 10% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series shall have requested the Trustees to call a meeting of the Holders of Securities of such series for any purpose specified in Section 15.01, by written request setting forth in reasonable detail the action proposed to be taken at the meeting, and the Trustees shall not have made the first publication of the notice of such meeting within 21 days after receipt of such request or shall not thereafter proceed to cause the meeting to be held as provided herein, then the Company or the Holders of Securities of such series in the amount above specified, as the case may be, may determine the time and the place in The City of New York, in Toronto or in London for such meeting and may call such meeting for such purposes by giving notice thereof as provided in paragraph (1) of this Section 15.02.

**SECTION 15.03 Persons Entitled to Vote at Meetings .**

To be entitled to vote at any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series, a Person shall be (1) a Holder of one or more Outstanding Securities of such series, or (2) a Person appointed by an instrument in writing as proxy for a Holder or Holders of one or more Outstanding Securities of such series by such Holder of Holders. The only Persons who shall be entitled to be present or to speak at any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series shall be the Persons entitled to vote at such meeting and their counsel, any representatives of the Trustees and their counsel and any representatives of the Company and its counsel.

**SECTION 15.04 Quorum; Action .**

The Persons entitled to vote a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a series shall constitute a quorum for a meeting of Holders of Securities of such series; *provided, however*, that, if any action is to be taken at such meeting with respect to a consent or waiver which this Indenture expressly provides may be given by the Holders of not less than a specified percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a series, the Persons entitled to vote such specified percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series shall constitute a quorum. In the absence of a quorum within 30 minutes of the time appointed for any such meeting, the meeting shall, if convened at the request of Holders of Securities of such series, be dissolved. In any other case the meeting may be adjourned for a period of not less than 10 days as determined by the chair of the meeting prior to the adjournment of such meeting. In the absence of a quorum at any such adjourned meeting, such adjourned meeting may be further adjourned for a period of not less than 10 days as determined by the chair of the meeting prior to the adjournment of such adjourned meeting. Notice of the reconvening of any adjourned meeting shall be given as provided in Section 15.02(a), except that such notice need be given only once not less than five days prior to the date on which the meeting is scheduled to be reconvened. Notice of the reconvening of any adjourned meeting shall state expressly the percentage, as provided above, of the principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series which shall constitute a quorum.

Subject to the foregoing, at the reconvening of any meeting adjourned for lack of a quorum the Persons entitled to vote 25% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities at the time shall constitute a quorum for the taking of any action set forth in the notice of the original meeting.

Except as limited by the proviso to Section 9.02, any resolution presented to a meeting or adjourned meeting duly reconvened at which a quorum is present as aforesaid may be adopted by the affirmative vote of the Holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series who have casted their votes; *provided, however*, that, except as limited by the proviso to Section 9.02, any resolution with respect to any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action which this Indenture expressly provides may be made, given or taken by the Holders of a specified percentage, which is less than a majority, in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a series may be adopted at a meeting or an adjourned meeting duly reconvened and at which a quorum is present as aforesaid by the affirmative vote of the Holders of not less than such specified percentage in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series.

Any resolution passed or decision taken at any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series duly held in accordance with this Section 15.04 shall be binding on all the Holders of Securities of such series and the related coupons, whether or not present or represented at the meeting.

Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section 15.04, if any action is to be taken at a meeting of Holders of Securities of any series with respect to any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action that this Indenture expressly provides may be made, given or taken by the Holders of a specified percentage in principal amount of all Outstanding Securities affected thereby, or of the Holders of such series and one or more additional series:

- (i) there shall be no minimum quorum requirement for such meeting; and
- (ii) the principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series that vote in favor of such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action shall be taken into account in determining whether such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action has been made, given or taken under this Indenture.

**SECTION 15.05 Determination of Voting Rights; Conduct and Adjournment of Meetings .**

- (1) Notwithstanding any provisions of this Indenture, the Trustees may make such reasonable regulations as they may deem advisable for any meeting of Holders of Securities of a series in regard to proof of the holding of Securities of such series and of the appointment of proxies and in regard to the appointment and duties of inspectors of votes, the submission and examination of proxies, certificates and other evidence of the right to vote, and such other matters concerning the conduct of the meeting as they shall deem appropriate. Except as otherwise permitted or required by any such regulations, the holding of Securities shall be proved in the manner specified in Section 1.05 and the appointment of any proxy shall be proved in the manner specified in Section 1.05 or by having the signature of the person executing the proxy witnessed or guaranteed by any trust company, bank or banker authorized by Section 1.05 to certify to the holding of Bearer Securities. Such regulations may provide that written instruments appointing proxies, regular on their face, may be presumed valid and genuine without the proof specified in Section 1.05 or other proof.

- (2) The Trustees shall, by an instrument in writing appoint a temporary chair of the meeting, unless the meeting shall have been called by the Company or by Holders of Securities as provided in Section 15.02(b), in which case the Company or the Holders of Securities of the series calling the meeting, as the case may be, shall in like manner appoint a temporary chair. A permanent chair and a permanent secretary of the meeting shall be elected by vote of the Persons entitled to vote a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series represented at the meeting.
- (3) At any meeting each Holder of a Security of such series or proxy shall be entitled to one vote for each \$1,000 principal amount of Outstanding Securities of such series held or represented by him (determined as specified in the definition of "Outstanding" in Section 1.01); *provided, however*, that no vote shall be cast or counted at any meeting in respect of any Security challenged as not Outstanding and ruled by the chair of the meeting to be not Outstanding. The chair of the meeting shall have no right to vote, except as a Holder of a Security of such series or a proxy.
- (4) Any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series duly called pursuant to Section 15.02 at which a quorum is present may be adjourned from time to time by Persons entitled to vote a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series represented at the meeting; and the meeting may be held as so adjourned without further notice.

**SECTION 15.06 Counting Votes and Recording Action of Meetings .**

The vote upon any resolution submitted to any meeting of Holders of Securities of any series shall be by written ballots on which shall be subscribed the signatures of the Holders of Securities of such series or of their representatives by proxy and the principal amounts and serial numbers, if any, of the Outstanding Securities of such series held or represented by them. The permanent chair of the meeting shall appoint two inspectors of votes who shall count all votes cast at the meeting for or against any resolution and who shall make and file with the secretary of the meeting their verified written reports in duplicate of all votes cast at the meeting. A record, at least in duplicate, of the proceedings of each meeting of Holders of Securities of any series shall be prepared by the secretary of the meeting and there shall be attached to said record the original reports of the inspectors of votes on any vote by ballot taken thereat and affidavits by one or more persons having knowledge of the facts setting forth a copy of the notice of the meeting and showing that said notice was given as provided in Section 15.02 and, if applicable, Section 15.04. Each copy shall be signed and verified by the affidavits of the permanent chair and secretary of the meeting and one such copy shall be delivered to the Company, and another to the Trustees to be preserved by the Trustees, the latter to have attached thereto the ballots voted at the meeting. Any record so signed and verified shall be conclusive evidence of the matters therein stated.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed, all as of the day and year first above written.

INTELGENX TECHNOLOGIES CORP.

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_,  
as U.S. Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_,  
as Canadian Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: Authorized Signing Officer

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: Authorized Signing Officer

FORM OF CERTIFICATE TO BE GIVEN BY  
PERSON ENTITLED TO RECEIVE BEARER SECURITY  
OR TO OBTAIN INTEREST PAYABLE PRIOR  
TO THE EXCHANGE DATE

CERTIFICATE

INTELGENX TECHNOLOGIES CORP.

\_\_\_\_\_ % Notes due \_\_\_\_\_

This is to certify that as of the date hereof, and except as set forth below, the above-captioned Securities held by you for our account (i) are owned by any person(s) that is not a citizen or resident of the United States; a corporation or partnership (including any entity treated as a corporation or partnership for United States federal income tax purposes) created or organized in or under the laws of the United States, any state thereof or the District of Columbia unless, in the case of a partnership, United States Treasury Regulations provide otherwise; any estate whose income is subject to United States federal income tax regardless of its source; or a trust if (A) a United States court can exercise primary supervision over the trust's administration and one or more United States persons are authorized to control all substantial decisions of the trust or (B) it was in existence on August 20, 1996 and has a valid election in effect under applicable United States Treasury Regulations to be treated as a United States person ("United States persons(s)"), (ii) are owned by United States person(s) that are (a) foreign branches of United States financial institutions (financial institutions, as defined in United States. United States Treasury Regulation Section 1.165 -12(c)(1)(v) are herein referred to as "financial institutions") purchasing for their own account or for resale, or (b) United States person(s) who acquired the Securities through foreign branches of United States financial institutions and who hold the Securities through such United States financial institutions on the date hereof (and in either case (a) or (b), each such United States financial institution hereby agrees, on its own behalf or through its agent, that you may advise IntelGenx Technologies Corp. or its agent that such financial institution will comply with the requirements of Section 165(j)(3)(A), (B) or (C) of the United States Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the regulations thereunder), or (iii) are owned by United States or foreign financial institution(s) for purposes of resale during the restricted period (as defined in United States Treasury Regulation Section 1.163 -5(c)(2)(i)(D)(7)), and, in addition, if the owner is a United States or foreign financial institution described in clause (iii) above (whether or not also described in clause (i) or (ii)), this is to further certify that such financial institution has not acquired the Securities for purposes of resale directly or indirectly to a United States person or to a person within the United States or its possessions.

As used herein, "United States" means the United States of America (including the states and the District of Columbia); and its "possessions" include Puerto Rico, the U.S. Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, Wake Island and the Northern Mariana Islands.

We undertake to advise you promptly in writing on or prior to the date on which you intend to submit your certification relating to the above-captioned Securities held by you for our account in accordance with your operating procedures if any applicable statement herein is not correct on such date, and in the absence of any such notification it may be assumed that this certification applies as of such date.

This certificate excepts and does not relate to U.S. \$ \_\_\_\_\_ of such interest in the above-captioned Securities in respect of which we are not able to certify and as to which we understand an exchange for an interest in a permanent global security or an exchange for and delivery of definitive Securities (or, if relevant, collection of any interest) cannot be made until we do so certify.

We understand that this certificate may be required in connection with certain tax legislation in the United States. If administrative or legal proceedings are commenced or threatened in connection with which this certificate is or would be relevant, we irrevocably authorize you to produce this certificate or a copy thereof to any interested party in such proceedings.

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_

[To be dated no earlier than the 15th day prior to  
(i) the Exchange Date or (ii) the relevant Interest  
Payment Date occurring prior to the Exchange  
Date, as applicable]

[Name of Person Making Certification]

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

FORM OF CERTIFICATE TO BE GIVEN BY THE DEPOSITARY  
IN CONNECTION WITH THE EXCHANGE OF A  
PORTION OF A TEMPORARY GLOBAL SECURITY OR TO OBTAIN INTEREST  
PAYABLE PRIOR TO THE EXCHANGE DATE

CERTIFICATE

INTELGENX TECHNOLOGIES CORP.

\_\_\_\_\_ % Notes due \_\_\_\_\_

This is to certify that based solely on written certifications that we have received in writing or by electronic transmission from each of the persons appearing in our records as persons entitled to a portion of the principal amount set forth below (our "Member Organizations") substantially in the form attached hereto, as of the date hereof, U.S. \$ \_\_\_\_\_ principal amount of the above-captioned Securities (i) is owned by any person(s) that is not a citizen or resident of the United States; a corporation or partnership (including any entity treated as a corporation or partnership for United States federal income tax purposes) created or organized in or under the laws of the United States, any state thereof or the District of Columbia unless, in the case of a partnership, United States Treasury Regulations provide otherwise; any estate whose income is subject to United States federal income tax regardless of its source; or a trust if (A) a United States court can exercise primary supervision over the trust's administration and one or more United States persons are authorized to control all substantial decisions of the trust or (B) it was in existence on August 20, 1996 and has a valid election in effect under applicable United States Treasury Regulations to be treated as a United States person ("United States person(s)"), (ii) is owned by United States person(s) that are (a) foreign branches of United States financial institutions (financial institutions, as defined in United States Treasury Regulation Section 1.165-12(c)(1)(v) are herein referred to as "financial institutions") purchasing for their own account or for resale, or (b) United States person(s) who acquired the Securities through foreign branches of United States financial institutions and who hold the Securities through such United States financial institutions on the date hereof (and in either case (a) or (b), each such financial institution has agreed, on its own behalf or through its agent, that we may advise IntelGenx Technologies Corp. or its agent that such financial institution will comply with the requirements of Section 165(j)(3)(A), (B) or (C) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the regulations thereunder), or (iii) is owned by United States or foreign financial institution(s) for purposes of resale during the restricted period (as defined in United States Treasury Regulation Section 1.163-5(c)(2)(i)(D)(7)) and, to the further effect, that financial institutions described in clause (iii) above (whether or not also described in clause (i) or (ii)) have certified that they have not acquired the Securities for purposes of resale directly or indirectly to a United States person or to a person within the United States or its possessions.

As used herein, "United States" means the United States of America (including the states and the District of Columbia); and its "possessions" include Puerto Rico, the U.S. Virgin Islands, Guam, American Samoa, Wake Island and the Northern Mariana Islands.

We further certify that (i) we are not making available herewith for exchange (or, if relevant, collection of any interest) any portion of the temporary global Security representing the above-captioned Securities excepted in the above-referenced certificates of Member Organizations and (ii) as of the date hereof we have not received any notification from any of our Member Organizations to the effect that the statements made by such Member Organizations with respect to any portion of the part submitted herewith for exchange (or, if relevant, collection of any interest) are no longer true and cannot be relied upon as of the date hereof.

We understand that this certification is required in connection with certain tax legislation in the United States. If administrative or legal proceedings are commenced or threatened in connection with which this certificate is or would be relevant, we irrevocably authorize you to produce this certificate or a copy thereof to any interested party in such proceedings.

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_

[To be dated no earlier than the 15th day prior to  
(i) the Exchange Date or (ii) the relevant Interest  
Payment Date occurring prior to the Exchange  
Date, as applicable]

[INSERT NAME OF DEPOSITARY]

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

October 4, 2018

IntelGenx Technologies Corp.  
6420 Abrams, Ville Saint Laurent  
Quebec, H4S 1Y2 Canada

Re: Registration Statement on Form S-3

Ladies and Gentlemen:

We have acted as counsel to IntelGenx Technologies Corp., a Delaware corporation (the “Company”), in connection with a Registration Statement on Form S-3 (the “Registration Statement”) filed by the Company with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “Commission”) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”), relating to the offer and sale by the Company from time to time of up to \$100,000,000 (or its foreign currency equivalent) aggregate offering price of (i) shares of its common stock, par value \$.00001 per share (the “Common Stock”), (ii) shares of its preferred stock, par value \$.00001 per share (the “Preferred Stock”), (iii) rights to purchase Common Stock or other securities of the Company (the “Rights”), (iv) its debt securities (the “Debt Securities”), to be issued under one or more indentures (each such indenture, as it may be supplemented or amended from time to time, an “Indenture”) to be entered into between the Company and the trustee named therein (each such trustee, a “Trustee”), (v) subscription receipts for the purchase or sale of Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Rights or Debt Securities (vi) warrants to purchase Common Stock, Preferred Stock or Debt Securities (the “Warrants”) and (vii) units consisting of any combination of Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Rights, Debt Securities, Subscription Receipts and Warrants (the “Units” and, together with the Common Stock, Preferred Stock, Rights, Debt Securities, Subscription Receipts and Warrants, the “Securities”), including any Securities issuable upon conversion, exchange or exercise of the Securities or settlement of the Subscription Receipts. The Debt Securities will be issued under an indenture (as it may be supplemented or amended from time to time, the “Indenture,” between the Company and the trustee named therein, as trustee (the “Trustee”), the form of which is attached to the Registration Statement as Exhibit 4.1.

We have examined such documents and have reviewed such questions of law as we have considered necessary or appropriate for the purposes of our opinions set forth below. In rendering our opinions set forth below, we have assumed the authenticity of all documents submitted to us as originals, the genuineness of all signatures and the conformity to authentic originals of all documents submitted to us as copies. We have also assumed the legal capacity for all purposes relevant hereto of all natural persons and, with respect to all parties to agreements or instruments relevant hereto other than the Company, that such parties had the requisite power and authority (corporate or otherwise) to execute, deliver and perform such agreements and instruments, that such agreements and instruments have been duly authorized by all requisite action (corporate or otherwise), executed and delivered by such parties and that such agreements and instruments are the valid, binding and enforceable obligations of such parties. As to questions of fact material to our opinions, we have relied upon certificates or comparable documents of officers and other representatives of the Company and of public officials.

---

Based on the foregoing, and assuming that (i) the Registration Statement and all amendments thereto (including post-effective amendments) will have become effective under the Securities Act and will continue to be so effective, (ii) a prospectus supplement to the prospectus contained in the Registration Statement, describing the Securities offered thereby, will have been prepared and filed with the Commission under the Securities Act, (iii) all Securities will be issued and sold in compliance with applicable federal and state securities laws and in the manner stated in the Registration Statement and the applicable prospectus supplement, (iv) with respect to any newly-issued shares of Common Stock or Preferred Stock to be offered by the Company pursuant to the Registration Statement, there will be sufficient shares of Common Stock or Preferred Stock, as applicable, authorized under the organizational documents of the Company and not otherwise reserved for issuance, (v) the organizational documents of the Company, each as amended as of the date hereof, will not have been amended from the date hereof in a manner that would affect the validity of our opinions set forth below, (vi) none of the terms of any Security to be established subsequent to the date hereof, nor the issuance, sale or delivery of such Security, nor the compliance by the Company with the terms of such Security, (a) will violate (1) any applicable law or (2) the organizational documents of the Company or (b) will result in a violation or breach of (1) any provision of any instrument or agreement then binding upon the Company or any of its assets or (2) any restriction imposed by any court or governmental body having jurisdiction over the Company or any of its assets, (vii) any applicable purchase, underwriting or similar agreement, and any other applicable agreement with respect to any Securities offered or sold, will have been duly authorized and validly executed and delivered by the Company and (viii) any Securities issuable upon conversion, exchange, exercise or settlement of any Security being offered or sold will be duly authorized, created and, if appropriate, reserved for issuance upon such conversion, exchange, exercise or settlement, we are of the opinion that:

1. With respect to any shares of Common Stock to be offered by the Company pursuant to the Registration Statement (the "Offered Common Shares"), when (a) the board of directors of the Company, a duly constituted and acting committee thereof or any officers of the Company delegated such authority (such board of directors, committee or officers being referred to herein as the "Board") have taken all necessary corporate action to authorize and approve the terms of the issuance and sale of the Offered Common Shares in conformity with the organizational documents of the Company and (b) certificates in the form required by the Delaware General Corporation Law representing the Offered Common Shares have been duly executed, countersigned, registered and delivered either (i) in accordance with the applicable purchase, underwriting or similar agreement approved by the Board upon payment of the consideration therefor (which consideration is not less than the par value of the Common Stock) provided for therein or (ii) upon conversion, exchange, exercise or settlement of any other Security, in accordance with the terms of such Security or the instrument governing such Security providing for such conversion, exchange, exercise or settlement as approved by the Board, for the consideration approved by the Board (which consideration is not less than the par value of the Common Stock), then the Offered Common Shares will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.
  2. With respect to any shares of any class or series of Preferred Stock to be offered by the Company pursuant to the Registration Statement (the "Offered Preferred Shares"), when (a) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action to establish the applicable class or series of Preferred Stock in accordance with the Delaware General Corporation Law (including, without limitation, by the Company properly filing a certificate of designations with respect to such class or series of Preferred Stock with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware), (b) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action to authorize and approve the terms of the Offered Preferred Stock and their issuance and sale in conformity with the terms of the applicable class or series of Preferred Stock as established by the Board and (c) certificates in the form required by the Delaware General Corporation Law representing the Offered Preferred Shares have been duly executed, countersigned, registered and delivered either (i) in accordance with the applicable purchase, underwriting or similar agreement approved by the Board upon payment of the consideration therefor (which consideration is not less than the par value of the Preferred Stock) provided for therein or (ii) upon conversion, exchange, exercise or settlement of any other Security, in accordance with the terms of such Security or the instrument governing such Security providing for such conversion, exchange, exercise or settlement as approved by the Board, for the consideration approved by the Board (which consideration is not less than the par value of the Preferred Stock), then the Offered Preferred Shares will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.
-

2. With respect to any Rights to be offered by the Company pursuant to the Registration Statement (the “Offered Rights”), when (a) a rights agreement relating to the Offered Rights (the “Rights Agreement”), to be entered into between the Company and the rights agent named therein (the “Rights Agent”), has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company and the Rights Agent, (b) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action to authorize and approve the terms of the Offered Rights and their issuance and sale in conformity with the Rights Agreement and (c) the Offered Rights have been issued, executed and countersigned in accordance with the terms of the Rights Agreement and delivered either (i) in accordance with the applicable purchase, underwriting or similar agreement approved by the Board upon payment of the consideration therefor provided for therein or (ii) upon conversion or exchange of any other Security, in accordance with the terms of such Security or the instrument governing such Security providing for such conversion or exchange as approved by the Board, for the consideration approved by the Board, then the Offered Rights will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.
  
  4. With respect to any Debt Securities to be offered by the Company pursuant to the Registration Statement (the “Offered Debt Securities”), when (a) the applicable Trustee has been qualified to act as trustee under the Indenture relating to the Offered Debt Securities (the “Applicable Indenture”), (b) the Applicable Indenture has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company, (c) the Applicable Indenture has been duly qualified under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, (d) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action to authorize and approve the terms of the Offered Debt Securities and their issuance and sale in conformity with the Applicable Indenture and (e) the Offered Debt Securities have been issued, executed and authenticated by the applicable Trustee in accordance with the terms of the Applicable Indenture and delivered either (i) in accordance with the applicable purchase, underwriting or similar agreement approved by the Board upon payment of the consideration therefor provided for therein or (ii) upon conversion, exchange, exercise or settlement of any other Security, in accordance with the terms of such Security or the instrument governing such Security providing for such conversion, exchange, exercise or settlement as approved by the Board, for the consideration approved by the Board, then the Offered Debt Securities will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.
-

5. With respect to any Subscription Receipts to be offered by the Company pursuant to the Registration Statement (the “Offered Subscription Receipts”), when (a) a purchase contract agreement relating to the Offered Subscription Receipts (the “Subscription Receipt Agreement”), to be entered into between the Company and the purchase contract agent named therein (the “Subscription Receipt Agent”), has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company, (b) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action to authorize and approve the terms of the Offered Subscription Receipts and their issuance and sale in conformity with the Subscription Receipt Agreement and (c) the Offered Subscription Receipts have been issued, executed and authenticated by the Subscription Receipt Agent in accordance with the terms of the Subscription Receipt Agreement and delivered either (i) in accordance with the applicable purchase, underwriting or similar agreement approved by the Board upon payment of the consideration therefor provided for therein or (ii) upon conversion or exchange of any other Security, in accordance with the terms of such Security or the instrument governing such Security providing for such conversion or exchange as approved by the Board, for the consideration approved by the Board, then the Offered Subscription Receipts will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.
  6. With respect to any Warrants to be offered by the Company pursuant to the Registration Statement (the “Offered Warrants”), when (a) a warrant agreement relating to the Offered Warrants (the “Warrant Agreement”), to be entered into between the Company and the warrant agent named therein (the “Warrant Agent”), has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company, (b) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action to authorize and approve the terms of the Offered Warrants and their issuance and sale in conformity with the Warrant Agreement and (c) the Offered Warrants have been issued, executed and countersigned by the Warrant Agent in accordance with the terms of the Warrant Agreement and delivered either (i) in accordance with the applicable purchase, underwriting or similar agreement approved by the Board upon payment of the consideration therefor provided for therein or (ii) upon conversion or exchange of any other Security, in accordance with the terms of such Security or the instrument governing such Security providing for such conversion or exchange as approved by the Board, for the consideration approved by the Board, then the Offered Warrants will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.
  7. With respect to any Units to be offered by the Company pursuant to the Registration Statement (the “Offered Units”), when (a) a unit agreement relating to the Offered Units (the “Unit Agreement”), to be entered into between the Company and the unit agent named therein (the “Unit Agent”), has been duly authorized, executed and delivered by the Company, (b) the Board has taken all necessary corporate action to authorize and approve the terms of the Offered Units and their issuance and sale in conformity with the Unit Agreement and (c) the Offered Units have been issued, executed and countersigned by the Unit Agent in accordance with the terms of the Unit Agreement and delivered either (i) in accordance with the applicable purchase, underwriting or similar agreement approved by the Board upon payment of the consideration therefor provided for therein or (ii) upon conversion or exchange of any other Security, in accordance with the terms of such Security or the instrument governing such Security providing for such conversion or exchange as approved by the Board, for the consideration approved by the Board, then the Offered Units will constitute valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their terms.
-

Our opinions set forth above are subject to the following qualifications and exceptions:

- (a) Our opinions set forth above are subject to the effect of any applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium or similar law relating to or affecting creditors' rights generally (including, without limitation, fraudulent conveyance laws).
- (b) Our opinions set forth above are subject to the effect of general principles of equity, including, without limitation, concepts of materiality, reasonableness, good faith and fair dealing and the possible unavailability of specific performance or injunctive relief, regardless of whether considered in a proceeding in equity or at law.
- (c) Our opinions set forth above are subject to limitations regarding the availability of indemnification and contribution where such indemnification or contribution may be limited by applicable law or the application of principles of public policy.
- (d) We express no opinion as to the enforceability of (i) provisions that relate to choice of law, forum selection or submission to jurisdiction (including, without limitation, any express or implied waiver of any objection to venue in any court or of any objection that a court is an inconvenient forum), (ii) waivers by the Company of any statutory or constitutional rights or remedies, (iii) terms which excuse any person or entity from liability for, or require the Company to indemnify such person or entity against, such person's or entity's negligence or willful misconduct or (iv) obligations to pay any prepayment premium, default interest rate, early termination fee or other form of liquidated damages, if the payment of such premium, interest rate, fee or damages may be construed as unreasonable in relation to actual damages or disproportionate to actual damages suffered as a result of such prepayment, default or termination.
- (e) We draw your attention to the fact that, under certain circumstances, the enforceability of terms to the effect that provisions may not be waived or modified except in writing may be limited.

We note that, as of the date of this opinion, a judgment for money in an action based on a Security denominated in a foreign currency or currency unit in a federal or state court in the United States ordinarily would be enforced in the United States only in United States dollars. The date used to determine the rate of conversion of the foreign currency or currency unit in which a particular Security is denominated into United States dollars will depend upon various factors, including which court renders the judgment. Under Section 27 of the New York Judiciary Law, a state court in the State of New York rendering a judgment on a Security would be required to render that judgment in the foreign currency or currency unit in which the Security is denominated, and the judgment would be converted into United States dollars at the exchange rate prevailing on the date of entry of the judgment.

---

Our opinions expressed above are limited to the laws of the State of New York, the Delaware General Corporation Law and the federal laws of the United States of America.

We hereby consent to the filing of this opinion as an exhibit to the Registration Statement, and to the reference to our firm under the heading "Legal Matters" in the prospectus constituting part of the Registration Statement. In giving this consent, we do not admit that we are within the category of persons whose consent is required under Section 7 of the Securities Act or the rules and regulations of the Commission thereunder.

Very truly yours,  
/s/ Dorsey & Whitney LLP

JBG/RR

---

---

# RICHTER

## Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

We hereby consent to the use in this Registration Statement No. 333-227498 on Amendment No. 1 to Form S-3 of IntelGenx Technologies Corp. of our report dated March 29, 2018 relating to our audits of the consolidated financial statements of IntelGenx Technologies Corp. as of and for the years ended December 31, 2017 and 2016.

*Richter LLP (Signed) <sup>1</sup>*

Montréal, Québec  
Canada  
October 4, 2018

---